

# ICF

## International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health



World Health Organization  
Geneva



07745

***Community Health Cell***  
**Library and Information Centre**  
367, " Srinivasa Nilaya "  
Jakkasandra 1st Main,  
1st Block, Koramangala,  
BANGALORE - 560 034.  
Phone : 5531518 / 5525372  
e-mail:sochara@vsnl.com







# ICF

## International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health



World Health Organization  
Geneva

## WHO Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

International classification of functioning, disability and health : ICF.

1. Human development 2. Body constitution 3. Health status 4. Disability evaluation 5. Socioeconomic factors 6. Causality 7. Classification 8. Manuals  
I. Title: ICF

(ISBN 92 4 154542 9)

(NLM classification: W 15)

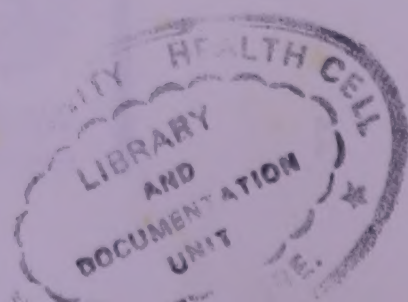
© World Health Organization 2001

Publications of the World Health Organization enjoy copyright protection in accordance with the provisions of Protocol 2 of the Universal Copyright Convention. All rights reserved.

The designations employed and the presentation of the material in this publication do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the Secretariat of the World Health Organization concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries.

The mention of specific companies or of certain manufacturers' products does not imply that they are endorsed or recommended by the World Health Organization in preference to others of a similar nature that are not mentioned. Errors and omissions excepted, the names of proprietary products are distinguished by initial capital letters.

D 200  
07745 P01





# Contents

A. Introduction	1
1. Background	3
2. Aims of ICF	5
3. Properties of ICF	7
4. Overview of ICF components	10
5. Model of Functioning and Disability	18
6. Use of ICF	21
B. One-level classification	27
C. Two-level classification	31
D. Detailed classification with definitions	45
Body Functions	47
Body Structures	105
Activities and Participation	123
Environmental Factors	171
E. Annexes	209
1. Taxonomic and terminological issues	211
2. Guidelines for coding ICF	219
3. Possible uses of the Activities and Participation list	234
4. Case examples	239
5. ICF and people with disabilities	242
6. Ethical guidelines for use of ICF	244
7. Summary of the revision process	246
8. Future directions for the ICF	250
9. Suggested ICF data requirements for ideal and minimal health information systems or surveys	253
10. Acknowledgements	254
F. Index	267





# ICE

## **Introduction**







# 1. Background

This volume contains the *International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health*, known as ICF.<sup>1</sup> The overall aim of the ICF classification is to provide a unified and standard language and framework for the description of health and health-related states. It defines components of health and some health-related components of well-being (such as education and labour). The domains contained in ICF can, therefore, be seen as *health domains* and *health-related domains*. These domains are described from the perspective of the body, the individual and society in two basic lists: (1) Body Functions and Structures; and (2) Activities and Participation.<sup>2</sup> As a classification, ICF systematically groups different domains<sup>3</sup> for a person in a given health condition (e.g. what a person with a disease or disorder does do or can do). *Functioning* is an umbrella term encompassing all body functions, activities and participation; similarly, *disability* serves as an umbrella term for impairments, activity limitations or participation restrictions. ICF also lists environmental factors that interact with all these constructs. In this way, it enables the user to record useful profiles of individuals' functioning, disability and health in various domains.

ICF belongs to the "family" of international classifications developed by the World Health Organization (WHO) for application to various aspects of health. The WHO family of international classifications provides a framework to code a wide range of information about health (e.g. diagnosis, functioning and disability, reasons for contact with health services) and uses a standardized common language permitting communication about health and health care across the world in various disciplines and sciences.

In WHO's international classifications, health conditions (diseases, disorders, injuries, etc.) are classified primarily in ICD-10 (shorthand for the International

---

<sup>1</sup> The text represents a revision of the International Classification of Impairments, Disabilities, and Handicaps (ICIDH), which was first published by the World Health Organization for trial purposes in 1980. Developed after systematic field trials and international consultation over the past five years, it was endorsed by the Fifty-fourth World Health Assembly for international use on 22 May 2001 (resolution WHA54.21).

<sup>2</sup> These terms, which replace the formerly used terms "impairment", "disability" and "handicap", extend the scope of the classification to allow positive experiences to be described. The new terms are further defined in this Introduction and are detailed within the classification. It should be noted that these terms are used with specific meanings that may differ from their everyday usage.

<sup>3</sup> A domain is a practical and meaningful set of related physiological functions, anatomical structures, actions, tasks, or areas of life.

Classification of Diseases, Tenth Revision),<sup>4</sup> which provides an etiological framework. Functioning and disability associated with health conditions are classified in ICF. ICD-10 and ICF are therefore complementary,<sup>5</sup> and users are encouraged to utilize these two members of the WHO family of international classifications together. ICD-10 provides a “diagnosis” of diseases, disorders or other health conditions, and this information is enriched by the additional information given by ICF on functioning.<sup>6</sup> Together, information on diagnosis plus functioning provides a broader and more meaningful picture of the health of people or populations, which can then be used for decision-making purposes.

The WHO family of international classifications provides a valuable tool to describe and compare the health of populations in an international context. The information on mortality (provided by ICD-10) and on health outcomes (provided by ICF) may be combined in summary measures of population health for monitoring the health of populations and its distribution, and also for assessing the contributions of different causes of mortality and morbidity.

ICF has moved away from being a “consequences of disease” classification (1980 version) to become a “components of health” classification. “Components of health” identifies the constituents of health, whereas “consequences” focuses on the impacts of diseases or other health conditions that may follow as a result. Thus, ICF takes a neutral stand with regard to etiology so that researchers can draw causal inferences using appropriate scientific methods. Similarly, this approach is also different from a “determinants of health” or “risk factors” approach. To facilitate the study of determinants or risk factors, ICF includes a list of environmental factors that describe the context in which individuals live.

---

<sup>4</sup>International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems, Tenth Revision, Vols. 1-3. Geneva, World Health Organization, 1992-1994.

<sup>5</sup>It is also important to recognize the overlap between ICD-10 and ICF. Both classifications begin with the body systems. Impairments refer to body structures and functions, which are usually parts of the “disease process” and are therefore also used in the ICD-10. Nevertheless, ICD-10 uses impairments (as signs and symptoms) as parts of a constellation that forms a “disease”, or sometimes as reasons for contact with health services, whereas the ICF system uses impairments as problems of body functions and structures associated with health conditions.

<sup>6</sup>Two persons with the same disease can have different levels of functioning, and two persons with the same level of functioning do not necessarily have the same health condition. Hence, joint use enhances data quality for medical purposes. Use of ICF should not bypass regular diagnostic procedures. In other uses, ICF may be used alone.



## 2. Aims of ICF

ICF is a multipurpose classification designed to serve various disciplines and different sectors. Its specific aims can be summarized as follows:

- to provide a scientific basis for understanding and studying health and health-related states, outcomes and determinants;
- to establish a common language for describing health and health-related states in order to improve communication between different users, such as health care workers, researchers, policy-makers and the public, including people with disabilities;
- to permit comparison of data across countries, health care disciplines, services and time;
- to provide a systematic coding scheme for health information systems.

These aims are interrelated, since the need for and uses of ICF require the construction of a meaningful and practical system that can be used by various consumers for health policy, quality assurance and outcome evaluation in different cultures.

### 2.1 Applications of ICF

Since its publication as a trial version in 1980, ICIDH has been used for various purposes, for example:

- as a statistical tool – in the collection and recording of data (e.g. in population studies and surveys or in management information systems);
- as a research tool – to measure outcomes, quality of life or environmental factors;
- as a clinical tool – in needs assessment, matching treatments with specific conditions, vocational assessment, rehabilitation and outcome evaluation;
- as a social policy tool – in social security planning, compensation systems and policy design and implementation;
- as an educational tool – in curriculum design and to raise awareness and undertake social action.

Since ICF is inherently a health and health-related classification it is also used by sectors such as insurance, social security, labour, education, economics, social policy and general legislation development, and environmental modification. It has been accepted as one of the United Nations social classifications and is referred to in and incorporates *The Standard Rules on the Equalization of*

*Opportunities for Persons with Disabilities.*<sup>7</sup> Thus ICF provides an appropriate instrument for the implementation of stated international human rights mandates as well as national legislation.

ICF is useful for a broad spectrum of different applications, for example social security, evaluation in managed health care, and population surveys at local, national and international levels. It offers a conceptual framework for information that is applicable to personal health care, including prevention, health promotion, and the improvement of participation by removing or mitigating societal hindrances and encouraging the provision of social supports and facilitators. It is also useful for the study of health care systems, in terms of both evaluation and policy formulation.

---

<sup>7</sup> *The Standard Rules on the Equalization of Opportunities for Persons with Disabilities*. Adopted by the United Nations General Assembly at its 48th session on 20 December 1993 (resolution 48/96). New York, NY, United Nations Department of Public Information, 1994.



### 3. Properties of ICF

A classification should be clear about what it classifies: its universe, its scope, its units of classification, its organization, and how these elements are structured in terms of their relation to each other. The following sections explain these basic properties of ICF.

#### 3.1 Universe of ICF

ICF encompasses all aspects of human health and some health-relevant components of well-being and describes them in terms of *health domains* and *health-related domains*.<sup>6</sup> The classification remains in the broad context of health and does not cover circumstances that are not health-related, such as those brought about by socioeconomic factors. For example, because of their race, gender, religion or other socioeconomic characteristics people may be restricted in their execution of a task in their current environment, but these are not health-related restrictions of participation as classified in ICF.

There is a widely held misunderstanding that ICF is only about people with disabilities; in fact, it is about *all people*. The health and health-related states associated with all health conditions can be described using ICF. In other words, ICF has universal application.<sup>7</sup>

#### 3.2 Scope of ICF

ICF provides a description of situations with regard to human functioning and its restrictions and serves as a framework to organize this information. It structures the information in a meaningful, interrelated and easily accessible way.

ICF organizes information in two parts. Part 1 deals with Functioning and Disability, while Part 2 covers Contextual Factors. Each part has two components:

##### 1. Components of Functioning and Disability

The Body component comprises two classifications, one for functions of body systems, and one for body structures. The chapters in both classifications are organized according to the body systems.

---

<sup>6</sup> Examples of health domains include seeing, hearing, walking, learning and remembering, while examples of health-related domains include transportation, education and social interactions.

<sup>7</sup> Bickenbach JE, Chatterji S, Badley EM, Üstün TB. Models of disablement, universalism and the ICIDH, *Social Science and Medicine*, 1999, 48:1173-1187.

The **Activities and Participation** component covers the complete range of domains denoting aspects of functioning from both an individual and a societal perspective.

## 2. Components of Contextual Factors

A list of **Environmental Factors** is the first component of Contextual Factors. Environmental factors have an impact on all components of functioning and disability and are organized in sequence from the individual's most immediate environment to the general environment.

**Personal Factors** is also a component of Contextual Factors but they are not classified in ICF because of the large social and cultural variance associated with them.

The components of Functioning and Disability in Part 1 of ICF can be expressed in two ways. On the one hand, they can be used to indicate problems (e.g. impairment, activity limitation or participation restriction summarized under the umbrella term *disability*); on the other hand they can indicate nonproblematic (i.e. neutral) aspects of health and health-related states summarized under the umbrella term *functioning*).

These components of functioning and disability are interpreted by means of four separate but related *constructs*. These constructs are operationalized by using *qualifiers*. Body functions and structures can be interpreted by means of changes in physiological systems or in anatomical structures. For the Activities and Participation component, two constructs are available: *capacity* and *performance* (see section 4.2).

A person's functioning and disability is conceived as a dynamic interaction<sup>10</sup> between health conditions (diseases, disorders, injuries, traumas, etc.) and contextual factors. As indicated above, Contextual Factors include both personal and environmental factors. ICF includes a comprehensive list of environmental factors as an essential component of the classification. Environmental factors interact with all the components of functioning and disability. The basic construct of the Environmental Factors component is the facilitating or hindering impact of features of the physical, social and attitudinal world.

## 3.3 Unit of classification

ICF classifies health and health-related states. The unit of classification is, therefore, *categories* within health and health-related domains. It is important to note, therefore, that in ICF persons are not the units of classification; that is, ICF does not classify people, but describes the situation of each person within an array of health or health-related domains. Moreover, the description is always made within the context of environmental and personal factors.

---

<sup>10</sup> This interaction can be viewed as a *process* or a *result* depending on the user.



### 3.4 Presentation of ICF

ICF is presented in two versions in order to meet the needs of different users for varying levels of detail.

The *full version* of ICF, as contained in this volume, provides classification at four levels of detail. These four levels can be aggregated into a higher-level classification system that includes all the domains at the second level. The two-level system is also available as a *short version* of ICF.

## 4. Overview of ICF components

### DEFINITIONS<sup>11</sup>

In the context of health:

**Body functions** are the physiological functions of body systems (including psychological functions).

**Body structures** are anatomical parts of the body such as organs, limbs and their components.

**Impairments** are problems in body function or structure such as a significant deviation or loss.

**Activity** is the execution of a task or action by an individual.

**Participation** is involvement in a life situation.

**Activity limitations** are difficulties an individual may have in executing activities.

**Participation restrictions** are problems an individual may experience in involvement in life situations.

**Environmental factors** make up the physical, social and attitudinal environment in which people live and conduct their lives.

An overview of these concepts is given in Table 1; they are explained further in operational terms in section 5.1. As the table indicates:

- ICF has two *parts*, each with two *components*:
  - Part 1. Functioning and Disability
    - (a) Body Functions and Structures
    - (b) Activities and Participation
  - Part 2. Contextual Factors
    - (c) Environmental Factors
    - (d) Personal Factors
- Each component can be expressed in both *positive* and *negative* terms.
- Each component consists of various domains and, within each domain, categories, which are the units of classification. Health and health-related states of an individual may be recorded by selecting the appropriate category

<sup>11</sup> See also Annex 1, Taxonomic and Terminological Issues.



code or codes and then adding *qualifiers*, which are numeric codes that specify the extent or the magnitude of the functioning or disability in that category, or the extent to which an environmental factor is a facilitator or barrier.

Table 1. An overview of ICF

	Part 1: Functioning and Disability		Part 2: Contextual Factors	
Components	Body Functions and Structures	Activities and Participation	Environmental Factors	Personal Factors
Domains	Body functions Body structures	Life areas (tasks, actions)	External influences on functioning and disability	Internal influences on functioning and disability
Constructs	Change in body functions (physiological)  Change in body structures (anatomical)	Capacity Executing tasks in a standard environment  Performance Executing tasks in the current environment	Facilitating or hindering impact of features of the physical, social, and attitudinal world	Impact of attributes of the person
Positive aspect	Functional and structural integrity	Activities Participation	Facilitators	not applicable
	Functioning			
Negative aspect	Impairment	Activity limitation Participation restriction	Barriers / hindrances	not applicable
	Disability			

## 4.1 Body Functions and Structures and impairments

*Definitions: Body functions are the physiological functions of body systems (including psychological functions).*

*Body structures are anatomical parts of the body such as organs, limbs and their components.*

*Impairments are problems in body function or structure as a significant deviation or loss.*

- (1) Body functions and body structures are classified in two different sections. These two classifications are designed for use in parallel. For example, body functions include basic human senses such as “seeing functions” and their structural correlates exist in the form of “eye and related structures”.
- (2) “Body” refers to the human organism as a whole; hence it includes the brain and its functions, i.e. the mind. Mental (or psychological) functions are therefore subsumed under body functions.
- (3) Body functions and structures are classified according to body systems; consequently, body structures are not considered as organs.<sup>12</sup>
- (4) Impairments of structure can involve an anomaly, defect, loss or other significant deviation in body structures. Impairments have been conceptualized in congruence with biological knowledge at the level of tissues or cells and at the subcellular or molecular level. For practical reasons, however, these levels are not listed.<sup>13</sup> The biological foundations of impairments have guided the classification and there may be room for expanding the classification at the cellular or molecular levels. For medical users, it should be noted that impairments are not the same as the underlying pathology, but are the manifestations of that pathology.
- (5) Impairments represent a deviation from certain generally accepted population standards in the biomedical status of the body and its functions, and definition of their constituents is undertaken primarily by those qualified to judge physical and mental functioning according to these standards.
- (6) Impairments can be temporary or permanent; progressive, regressive or static; intermittent or continuous. The deviation from the population norm may be slight or severe and may fluctuate over time. These characteristics are captured in further descriptions, mainly in the codes, by means of qualifiers after the point.

---

<sup>12</sup> Although organ level was mentioned in the 1980 version of ICIDH, the definition of an “organ” is not clear. The eye and ear are traditionally considered as organs; however, it is difficult to identify and define their boundaries, and the same is true of extremities and internal organs. Instead of an approach by “organ”, which implies the existence of an entity or unit within the body, ICF replaces this term with “body structure”.

<sup>13</sup> Thus impairments coded using the full version of ICF should be detectable or noticeable by others or the person concerned by direct observation or by inference from observation.



- (7) Impairments are not contingent on etiology or how they are developed; for example, loss of vision or a limb may arise from a genetic abnormality or an injury. The presence of an impairment necessarily implies a cause; however, the cause may not be sufficient to explain the resulting impairment. Also, when there is an impairment, there is a dysfunction in body functions or structures, but this may be related to any of the various diseases, disorders or physiological states.
- (8) Impairments may be part or an expression of a health condition, but do not necessarily indicate that a disease is present or that the individual should be regarded as sick.
- (9) Impairments are broader and more inclusive in scope than disorders or diseases; for example, the loss of a leg is an impairment of body structure, but not a disorder or a disease.
- (10) Impairments may result in other impairments; for example, a lack of muscle power may impair movement functions, heart functions may relate to deficit in respiratory functions, and impaired perception may relate to thought functions.
- (11) Some categories of the Body Functions and Structures component and the ICD-10 categories seem to overlap, particularly with regard to symptoms and signs. However, the purposes of the two classifications are different. ICD-10 classifies symptoms in special chapters to document morbidity or service utilization, whereas ICF shows them as part of the body functions, which may be used for prevention or identifying patients' needs. Most importantly, in ICF the Body Functions and Structures classification is intended to be used along with the Activities and Participation categories.
- (12) Impairments are classified in the appropriate categories using defined identification criteria (e.g. as present or absent according to a threshold level). These criteria are the same for body functions and structures. They are: (a) loss or lack; (b) reduction; (c) addition or excess; and (d) deviation. Once an impairment is present, it may be scaled in terms of its severity using the generic qualifier in the ICF.
- (13) Environmental factors interact with body functions, as in the interactions between air quality and breathing, light and seeing, sounds and hearing, distracting stimuli and attention, ground texture and balance, and ambient temperature and body temperature regulation.

4.2 Activities and Participation /activity limitations and participation restrictions

Definitions:      *Activity is the execution of a task or action by an individual.*

*Participation is involvement in a life situation.*

*Activity limitations are difficulties an individual may have in executing activities.*

*Participation restrictions are problems an individual may experience in involvement in life situations.*

- (1) The domains for the Activities and Participation component are given in a *single list* that covers the full range of life areas (from basic learning or watching to composite areas such as interpersonal interactions or employment). The component can be used to denote activities (a) or participation (p) or both. The domains of this component are qualified by the two qualifiers of *performance* and *capacity*. Hence the information gathered from the list provides a data matrix that has no overlap or redundancy (see Table 2).

Table 2. Activities and Participation: information matrix

Domains		Qualifiers	
		Performance	Capacity
d1	Learning and applying knowledge		
d2	General tasks and demands		
d3	Communication		
d4	Mobility		
d5	Self-care		
d6	Domestic life		
d7	Interpersonal interactions and relationships		
d8	Major life areas		
d9	Community, social and civic life		

- (2) The *performance* qualifier describes what an individual does in his or her current environment. Because the current environment includes a societal context, performance can also be understood as "involvement in a life situation" or "the lived experience" of people in the actual context in which they live.<sup>14</sup> This context includes the environmental factors – all aspects of the physical, social and attitudinal world which can be coded using the Environmental Factors component.
- (3) The *capacity* qualifier describes an individual's ability to execute a task or an action. This construct aims to indicate the highest probable level of functioning that a person may reach in a given domain at a given moment. To assess the full ability of the individual, one would need to have a "standardized" environment to neutralize the varying impact of different environments on the ability of the individual. This standardized environment may be: (a) an actual environment commonly used for capacity assessment in test settings; or (b) in cases where this is not possible, an assumed environment which can be thought to have a uniform impact. This environment can be called a "uniform" or "standard" environment. Thus, capacity reflects the environmentally adjusted ability of the individual. This adjustment has to be the same for all persons in all countries to allow for international comparisons. The features of the uniform or standard environment can be coded using the Environmental Factors classification. The gap between capacity and performance reflects the difference between the impacts of current and uniform environments, and thus provides a useful guide as to what can be done to the environment of the individual to improve performance.
- (4) Both capacity and performance qualifiers can further be used with and without assistive devices or personal assistance. While neither devices nor personal assistance eliminate the impairments, they may remove limitations on functioning in specific domains. This type of coding is particularly useful to identify how much the functioning of the individual would be limited without the assistive devices (see coding guidelines in Annex 2)
- (5) Difficulties or problems in these domains can arise when there is a qualitative or quantitative alteration in the way in which an individual carries out these domain functions. *Limitations* or *restrictions* are assessed against a generally accepted population standard. The standard or norm against which an individual's capacity and performance is compared is that of an individual without a similar health condition (disease, disorder or injury, etc.). The limitation or restriction records the discordance between the observed and the expected performance. The expected performance is the population norm, which represents the experience of people without the specific health

---

<sup>14</sup> The definition of "participation" brings in the concept of involvement. Some proposed definitions of "involvement" incorporate taking part, being included or engaged in an area of life, being accepted, or having access to needed resources. Within the information matrix in Table 2 the only possible indicator of participation is coding through performance. This does not mean that participation is automatically equated with performance. The concept of involvement should also be distinguished from the subjective experience of involvement (the sense of "belonging"). Users who wish to code involvement separately should refer to the coding guidelines in Annex 2.



condition. The same norm is used in the capacity qualifier so that one can infer what can be done to the environment of the individual to enhance performance.

- (6) A problem with performance can result directly from the social environment, even when the individual has no impairment. For example, an individual who is HIV-positive without any symptoms or disease, or someone with a genetic predisposition to a certain disease, may exhibit no impairments or may have sufficient capacity to work, yet may not do so because of the denial of access to services, discrimination or stigma.
- (7) It is difficult to distinguish between "Activities" and "Participation" on the basis of the domains in the Activities and Participation component. Similarly, differentiating between "individual" and "societal" perspectives on the basis of domains has not been possible given international variation and differences in the approaches of professionals and theoretical frameworks. Therefore, ICF provides a single list that can be used, if users so wish, to differentiate activities and participation in their own operational ways. This is further explained in Annex 3. There are four possible ways of doing so:
  - (a) to designate some domains as activities and others as participation, not allowing any overlap;
  - (b) same as (a) above, but allowing partial overlap;
  - (c) to designate all detailed domains as activities and the broad category headings as participation;
  - (d) to use all domains as both activities and participation.

### 4.3 Contextual Factors

Contextual Factors represent the complete background of an individual's life and living. They include two components: Environmental Factors and Personal Factors – which may have an impact on the individual with a health condition and that individual's health and health-related states.

*Environmental factors* make up the physical, social and attitudinal environment in which people live and conduct their lives. These factors are external to individuals and can have a positive or negative influence on the individual's performance as a member of society, on the individual's capacity to execute actions or tasks, or on the individual's body function or structure.

- (1) Environmental factors are organized in the classification to focus on two different levels:
  - (a) *Individual* – in the immediate environment of the individual, including settings such as home, workplace and school. Included at this level are the physical and material features of the environment that an individual comes face to face with, as well as direct contact with others such as family, acquaintances, peers and strangers.

- (b) *Societal* – formal and informal social structures, services and overarching approaches or systems in the community or society that have an impact on individuals. This level includes organizations and services related to the work environment, community activities, government agencies, communication and transportation services, and informal social networks as well as laws, regulations, formal and informal rules, attitudes and ideologies.
- (2) Environmental factors interact with the components of Body Functions and Structures and Activities and Participation. For each component, the nature and extent of that interaction may be elaborated by future scientific work. Disability is characterized as the outcome or result of a complex relationship between an individual's health condition and personal factors, and of the external factors that represent the circumstances in which the individual lives. Because of this relationship, different environments may have a very different impact on the same individual with a given health condition. An environment with barriers, or without facilitators, will restrict the individual's performance; other environments that are more facilitating may increase that performance. Society may hinder an individual's performance because either it creates barriers (e.g. inaccessible buildings) or it does not provide facilitators (e.g. unavailability of assistive devices).

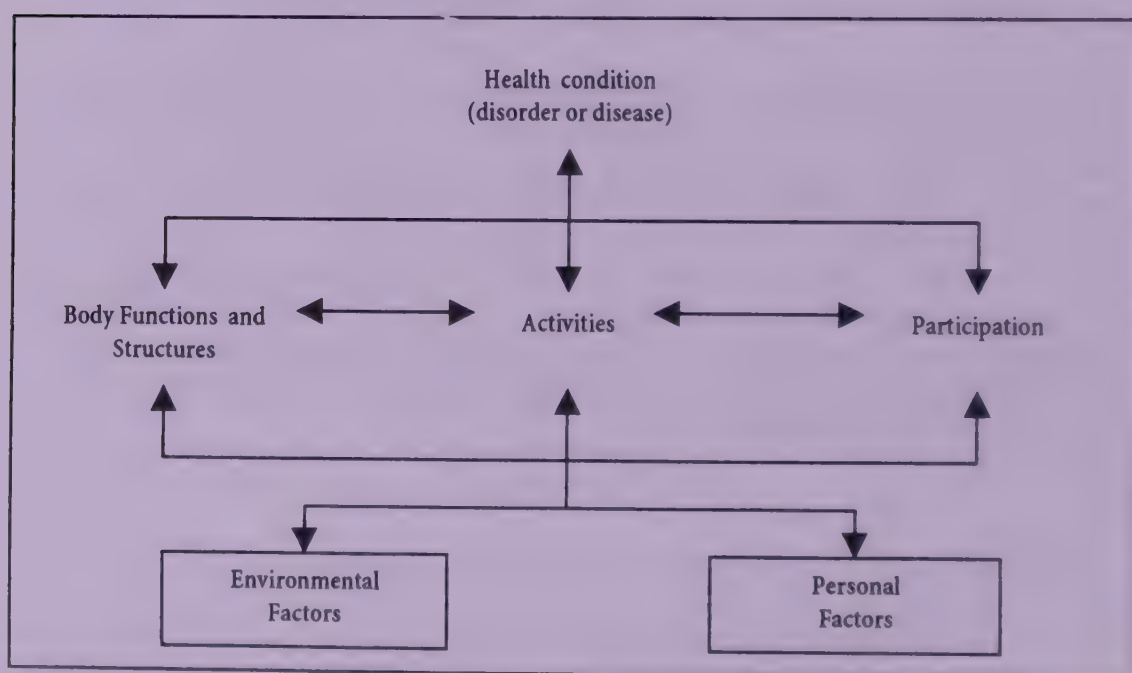
*Personal factors* are the particular background of an individual's life and living, and comprise features of the individual that are not part of a health condition or health states. These factors may include gender, race, age, other health conditions, fitness, lifestyle, habits, upbringing, coping styles, social background, education, profession, past and current experience (past life events and concurrent events), overall behaviour pattern and character style, individual psychological assets and other characteristics, all or any of which may play a role in disability at any level. Personal factors are not classified in ICF. However, they are included in Fig. 1 to show their contribution, which may have an impact on the outcome of various interventions.

## 5. Model of Functioning and Disability

### 5.1 Process of functioning and disability

As a classification, ICF does not model the “process” of functioning and disability. It can be used, however, to describe the process by providing the means to map the different constructs and domains. It provides a multi-perspective approach to the classification of functioning and disability as an interactive and evolutionary process. It provides the building blocks for users who wish to create models and study different aspects of this process. In this sense, ICF can be seen as a language: the texts that can be created with it depend on the users, their creativity and their scientific orientation. In order to visualize the current understanding of interaction of various components, the diagram presented in Fig. 1 may be helpful.<sup>15</sup>

Fig. 1. Interactions between the components of ICF



<sup>15</sup> ICF differs substantially from the 1980 version of ICIDH in the depiction of the interrelations between functioning and disability. It should be noted that any diagram is likely to be incomplete and prone to misrepresentation because of the complexity of interactions in a multidimensional model. The model is drawn to illustrate multiple interactions. Other depictions indicating other important foci in the process are certainly possible. Interpretations of interactions between different components and constructs may also vary (for example, the impact of environmental factors on body functions certainly differs from their impact on participation).



In this diagram, an individual's functioning in a specific domain is an interaction or complex relationship between the health condition and contextual factors (i.e. environmental and personal factors). There is a dynamic interaction among these entities: interventions in one entity have the potential to modify one or more of the other entities. These interactions are specific and not always in a predictable one-to-one relationship. The interaction works in two directions; the presence of disability may even modify the health condition itself. To infer a limitation in capacity from one or more impairments, or a restriction of performance from one or more limitations, may often seem reasonable. It is important, however, to collect data on these constructs independently and thereafter explore associations and causal links between them. If the full health experience is to be described, all components are useful. For example, one may:

- have impairments without having capacity limitations (e.g. a disfigurement in leprosy may have no effect on a person's capacity);
- have performance problems and capacity limitations without evident impairments (e.g. reduced performance in daily activities associated with many diseases);
- have performance problems without impairments or capacity limitations (e.g. an HIV-positive individual, or an ex-patient recovered from mental illness, facing stigmatization or discrimination in interpersonal relations or work);
- have capacity limitations without assistance, and no performance problems in the current environment (e.g. an individual with mobility limitations may be provided by society with assistive technology to move around);
- experience a degree of influence in a reverse direction (e.g. lack of use of limbs can cause muscle atrophy; institutionalization may result in loss of social skills).

Case examples in Annex 4 further illustrate possibilities of interactions between the constructs.

The scheme shown in Fig. 1 demonstrates the role that contextual factors (i.e. environmental and personal factors) play in the process. These factors interact with the individual with a health condition and determine the level and extent of the individual's functioning. Environmental factors are extrinsic to the individual (e.g. the attitudes of the society, architectural characteristics, the legal system) and are classified in the Environmental Factors classification. Personal Factors, on the other hand, are not classified in the current version of ICF. They include gender, race, age, fitness, lifestyle, habits, coping styles and other such factors. Their assessment is left to the user, if needed.

## 5.2 Medical and social models

A variety of conceptual models<sup>16</sup> has been proposed to understand and explain disability and functioning. These may be expressed in a dialectic of “medical model” versus “social model”. The *medical model* views disability as a problem of the person, directly caused by disease, trauma or other health condition, which requires medical care provided in the form of individual treatment by professionals. Management of the disability is aimed at cure or the individual’s adjustment and behaviour change. Medical care is viewed as the main issue, and at the political level the principal response is that of modifying or reforming health care policy. The *social model* of disability, on the other hand, sees the issue mainly as a socially created problem, and basically as a matter of the full integration of individuals into society. Disability is not an attribute of an individual, but rather a complex collection of conditions, many of which are created by the social environment. Hence the management of the problem requires social action, and it is the collective responsibility of society at large to make the environmental modifications necessary for the full participation of people with disabilities in all areas of social life. The issue is therefore an attitudinal or ideological one requiring social change, which at the political level becomes a question of human rights. For this model disability is a political issue.

ICF is based on an integration of these two opposing models. In order to capture the integration of the various perspectives of functioning, a “biopsychosocial” approach is used. Thus, ICF attempts to achieve a synthesis, in order to provide a coherent view of different perspectives of health from a biological, individual and social perspective.<sup>17</sup>

---

<sup>16</sup> The term “model” here means construct or paradigm, which differs from the use of the term in the previous section.

<sup>17</sup> See also Annex 5 - “ICF and people with disabilities”.

## 6. Use of ICF

ICF is a classification of human functioning and disability. It systematically groups health and health-related domains. Within each component, domains are further grouped according to their common characteristics (such as their origin, type, or similarity) and ordered in a meaningful way. The classification is organized according to a set of principles (see Annex 1). These principles refer to the interrelatedness of the levels and the hierarchy of the classification (sets of levels). However, some categories in ICF are arranged in a non-hierarchical manner, with no ordering but as equal members of a branch.

The following are structural features of the classification that have a bearing on its use.

- (1) ICF gives standard operational definitions of the health and health-related domains as opposed to “vernacular” definitions of health. These definitions describe the essential attributes of each domain (e.g. qualities, properties, and relationships) and contain information as to what is included and excluded in each domain. The definitions contain commonly used anchor points for assessment so that they can be translated into questionnaires. Conversely, results from existing assessment instruments can be coded in ICF terms. For example, “seeing functions” are defined in terms of functions of sensing form and contour, from varying distances, using one or both eyes, so that the severity of difficulties of vision can be coded at mild, moderate, severe or total levels in relation to these parameters.
- (2) ICF uses an alphanumeric system in which the letters b, s, d and e are used to denote Body Functions, Body Structures, Activities and Participation, and Environmental Factors. These letters are followed by a numeric code that starts with the chapter number (one digit), followed by the second level (two digits), and the third and fourth levels (one digit each).
- (3) ICF categories are “nested” so that broader categories are defined to include more detailed subcategories of the parent category. (For example, Chapter 4 in the Activities and Participation component, on Mobility, includes separate categories on standing, sitting, walking, carrying items, and so on). The short (concise) version covers two levels, whereas the full (detailed) version extends to four levels. The short version and full version codes are in correspondence, and the short version can be aggregated from the full version.
- (4) Any individual may have a range of codes at each level. These may be independent or interrelated.
- (5) The ICF codes are only complete with the presence of a *qualifier*, which denotes a magnitude of the level of health (e.g. severity of the problem). Qualifiers are coded as one, two or more numbers after a point (or *separator*). Use of any code should be accompanied by at least one qualifier. Without qualifiers, codes have no inherent meaning.



- (6) The first qualifier for Body Functions and Structures, the performance and capacity qualifiers for Activities and Participation, and the first qualifier for Environmental Factors all describe the extent of problems in the respective component.
- (7) All three components classified in ICF (Body Functions and Structures, Activities and Participation, and Environmental Factors) are quantified using the same generic scale. Having a problem may mean an impairment, limitation, restriction or barrier depending on the construct. Appropriate qualifying words as shown in brackets below should be chosen according to the relevant classification domain (where xxx stands for the second-level domain number). For this quantification to be used in a universal manner, assessment procedures need to be developed through research. Broad ranges of percentages are provided for those cases in which calibrated assessment instruments or other standards are available to quantify the impairment, capacity limitation, performance problem or barrier. For example, when “no problem” or “complete problem” is specified the coding has a margin of error of up to 5%. “Moderate problem” is defined as up to half of the time or half the scale of total difficulty. The percentages are to be calibrated in different domains with reference to relevant population standards as percentiles.

xxx.0 NO problem	(none, absent, negligible,... )	0-4 %
xxx.1 MILD problem	(slight, low,...)	5-24 %
xxx.2 MODERATE problem	(medium, fair,...)	25-49 %
xxx.3 SEVERE problem	(high, extreme, ...)	50-95 %
xxx.4 COMPLETE problem	(total,...)	96-100 %
xxx.8 not specified		
xxx.9 not applicable		

- (8) In the case of environmental factors, this first qualifier can be used to denote either the extent of positive effects of the environment, i.e. facilitators, or the extent of negative effects, i.e. barriers. Both use the same 0-4 scale, but to denote facilitators the point is replaced by a plus sign: for example e110+2. Environmental Factors can be coded (a) in relation to each construct individually, or (b) overall, without reference to any individual construct. The first option is preferable, since it identifies the impact and attribution more clearly.
- (9) For different users, it might be appropriate and helpful to add other kinds of information to the coding of each item. There are a variety of additional qualifiers that could be useful. Table 3 sets out the details of the qualifiers for each component as well as suggested additional qualifiers to be developed.
- (10) The descriptions of health and health-related domains refer to their use at a given moment (i.e. as a snapshot). However, use at multiple time points is possible to describe a trajectory over time and process.
- (11) In ICF, a person's health and health-related states are given an array of codes that encompass the two parts of the classification. Thus the maximum

number of codes per person can be 34 at the one-digit level (8 body functions, 8 body structures, 9 performance and 9 capacity codes). Similarly, for the two-level items the total number of codes is 362. At more detailed levels, these codes number up to 1424 items. In real-life applications of ICF, a set of 3 to 18 codes may be adequate to describe a case with two-level (three-digit) precision. Generally the more detailed four-level version is used for specialist services (e.g. rehabilitation outcomes, geriatrics), whereas the two-level classification can be used for surveys and clinical outcome evaluation.

Further coding guidelines are presented in Annex 2. Users are strongly recommended to obtain training in the use of the classification through WHO and its network of collaborating centres.

Table 3. Qualifiers

Components	First qualifier	Second qualifier
Body Functions (b)	<p>Generic qualifier with the negative scale used to indicate the extent or magnitude of an impairment</p> <p>Example: b167.3 to indicate a severe impairment in specific mental functions of language</p>	None
Body Structures (s)	<p>Generic qualifier with the negative scale used to indicate the extent or magnitude of an impairment</p> <p>Example: s730.3 to indicate a severe impairment of the upper extremity</p>	<p>Used to indicate the nature of the change in the respective body structure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 no change in structure</li> <li>1 total absence</li> <li>2 partial absence</li> <li>3 additional part</li> <li>4 aberrant dimensions</li> <li>5 discontinuity</li> <li>6 deviating position</li> <li>7 qualitative changes in structure, including accumulation of fluid</li> <li>8 not specified</li> <li>9 not applicable</li> </ul> <p>Example: s730.32 to indicate the partial absence of the upper extremity</p>
Activities and Participation (d)	<p>Performance</p> <p>Generic qualifier</p> <p>Problem in the person's current environment</p> <p>Example: d5101.1_ to indicate mild difficulty with bathing the whole body with the use of assistive devices that are available to the person in his or her current environment</p>	<p>Capacity</p> <p>Generic qualifier</p> <p>Limitation without assistance</p> <p>Example: d5101._2 to indicate moderate difficulty with bathing the whole body; implies that there is moderate difficulty without the use of assistive devices or personal help</p>
Environmental Factors (e)	<p>Generic qualifier, with negative and positive scale, to denote extent of barriers and facilitators respectively</p> <p>Example: e130.2 to indicate that products for education are a moderate barrier. Conversely, e130+2 would indicate that products for education are a moderate facilitator</p>	None



## 54<sup>th</sup> World Health Assembly endorsement of ICF for international use

The resolution WHA54.21 reads as follows:

The Fifty-fourth World Health Assembly,

1. ENDORSES the second edition of the International Classification of Impairments, Disabilities and Handicaps (ICIDH), with the title International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health, henceforth referred to in short as ICF;
2. URGES Member States to use ICF in their research, surveillance and reporting as appropriate, taking into account specific situations in Member States and, in particular, in view of possible future revisions;
3. REQUESTS the Director-General to provide support to Member States, at their request, in making use of ICF.



# ICF

## **One-Level Classification**

**List of chapter headings  
in the classification**





## Body functions

Chapter 1	Mental functions
Chapter 2	Sensory functions and pain
Chapter 3	Voice and speech functions
Chapter 4	Functions of the cardiovascular, haematological, immunological and respiratory systems
Chapter 5	Functions of the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems
Chapter 6	Genitourinary and reproductive functions
Chapter 7	Neuromusculoskeletal and movement-related functions
Chapter 8	Functions of the skin and related structures

## Body structures

Chapter 1	Structures of the nervous system
Chapter 2	The eye, ear and related structures
Chapter 3	Structures involved in voice and speech
Chapter 4	Structures of the cardiovascular, immunological and respiratory systems
Chapter 5	Structures related to the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems
Chapter 6	Structures related to the genitourinary and reproductive systems
Chapter 7	Structures related to movement
Chapter 8	Skin and related structures

## Activities and participation

Chapter 1	Learning and applying knowledge
Chapter 2	General tasks and demands
Chapter 3	Communication
Chapter 4	Mobility
Chapter 5	Self-care
Chapter 6	Domestic life
Chapter 7	Interpersonal interactions and relationships
Chapter 8	Major life areas
Chapter 9	Community, social and civic life

## Environmental factors

Chapter 1	Products and technology
Chapter 2	Natural environment and human-made changes to environment
Chapter 3	Support and relationships
Chapter 4	Attitudes
Chapter 5	Services, systems and policies



# ICF

## **Two-Level classification**

**List of chapter headings  
and first branching level  
in the classification**



# BODY FUNCTIONS

## *Chapter 1 Mental functions*

### *Global mental functions (b110-b139)*

- b110 Consciousness functions
- b114 Orientation functions
- b117 Intellectual functions
- b122 Global psychosocial functions
- b126 Temperament and personality functions
- b130 Energy and drive functions
- b134 Sleep functions
- b139 Global mental functions, other specified and unspecified

### *Specific mental functions (b140-b189)*

- b140 Attention functions
- b144 Memory functions
- b147 Psychomotor functions
- b152 Emotional functions
- b156 Perceptual functions
- b160 Thought functions
- b164 Higher-level cognitive functions
- b167 Mental functions of language
- b172 Calculation functions
- b176 Mental function of sequencing complex movements
- b180 Experience of self and time functions
- b189 Specific mental functions, other specified and unspecified
- b198 Mental functions, other specified
- b199 Mental functions, unspecified

## *Chapter 2 Sensory functions and pain*

### *Seeing and related functions (b210-b229)*

- b210 Seeing functions
- b215 Functions of structures adjoining the eye
- b220 Sensations associated with the eye and adjoining structures
- b229 Seeing and related functions, other specified and unspecified

### *Hearing and vestibular functions (b230-b249)*

- b230 Hearing functions
- b235 Vestibular functions
- b240 Sensations associated with hearing and vestibular function
- b249 Hearing and vestibular functions, other specified and unspecified

### *Additional sensory functions (b250-b279)*

- b250 Taste function
- b255 Smell function
- b260 Proprioceptive function
- b265 Touch function
- b270 Sensory functions related to temperature and other stimuli



b279 Additional sensory functions, other specified and unspecified

***Pain (b280-b289)***

b280 Sensation of pain

b289 Sensation of pain, other specified and unspecified

b298 Sensory functions and pain, other specified

b299 Sensory functions and pain, unspecified

***Chapter 3 Voice and speech functions***

b310 Voice functions

b320 Articulation functions

b330 Fluency and rhythm of speech functions

b340 Alternative vocalization functions

b398 Voice and speech functions, other specified

b399 Voice and speech functions, unspecified

***Chapter 4 Functions of the cardiovascular, haematological, immunological and respiratory systems***

***Functions of the cardiovascular system (b410-b429)***

b410 Heart functions

b415 Blood vessel functions

b420 Blood pressure functions

b429 Functions of the cardiovascular system, other specified and unspecified

***Functions of the haematological and immunological systems (b430-b439)***

b430 Haematological system functions

b435 Immunological system functions

b439 Functions of the haematological and immunological systems, other specified and unspecified

***Functions of the respiratory system (b440-b449)***

b440 Respiration functions

b445 Respiratory muscle functions

b449 Functions of the respiratory system, other specified and unspecified

***Additional functions and sensations of the cardiovascular and respiratory systems (b450-b469)***

b450 Additional respiratory functions

b455 Exercise tolerance functions

b460 Sensations associated with cardiovascular and respiratory functions

b469 Additional functions and sensations of the cardiovascular and respiratory systems, other specified and unspecified

b498 Functions of the cardiovascular, haematological, immunological and respiratory systems, other specified

b499 Functions of the cardiovascular, haematological, immunological and respiratory systems, unspecified

## ***Chapter 5 Functions of the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems***

### ***Functions related to the digestive system (b510-b539)***

- b510 Ingestion functions
- b515 Digestive functions
- b520 Assimilation functions
- b525 Defecation functions
- b530 Weight maintenance functions
- b535 Sensations associated with the digestive system
- b539 Functions related to the digestive system, other specified and unspecified

### ***Functions related to metabolism and the endocrine system (b540-b559)***

- b540 General metabolic functions
- b545 Water, mineral and electrolyte balance functions
- b550 Thermoregulatory functions
- b555 Endocrine gland functions
- b559 Functions related to metabolism and the endocrine system, other specified and unspecified
- b598 Functions of the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems, other specified
- b599 Functions of the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems, unspecified

## ***Chapter 6 Genitourinary and reproductive functions***

### ***Urinary functions (b610-b639)***

- b610 Urinary excretory functions
- b620 Urination functions
- b630 Sensations associated with urinary functions
- b639 Urinary functions, other specified and unspecified

### ***Genital and reproductive functions (b640-b679)***

- b640 Sexual functions
- b650 Menstruation functions
- b660 Procreation functions
- b670 Sensations associated with genital and reproductive functions
- b679 Genital and reproductive functions, other specified and unspecified
- b698 Genitourinary and reproductive functions, other specified
- b699 Genitourinary and reproductive functions, unspecified

## ***Chapter 7 Neuromusculoskeletal and movement-related functions***

### ***Functions of the joints and bones (b710-b729)***

- b710 Mobility of joint functions
- b715 Stability of joint functions
- b720 Mobility of bone functions
- b729 Functions of the joints and bones, other specified and unspecified

*Muscle functions (b730-b749)*

- b730 Muscle power functions
- b735 Muscle tone functions
- b740 Muscle endurance functions
- b749 Muscle functions, other specified and unspecified

*Movement functions (b750-b789)*

- b750 Motor reflex functions
- b755 Involuntary movement reaction functions
- b760 Control of voluntary movement functions
- b765 Involuntary movement functions
- b770 Gait pattern functions
- b780 Sensations related to muscles and movement functions
- b789 Movement functions, other specified and unspecified
- b798 Neuromusculoskeletal and movement-related functions, other specified
- b799 Neuromusculoskeletal and movement-related functions, unspecified

*Chapter 8 Functions of the skin and related structures**Functions of the skin (b810-b849)*

- b810 Protective functions of the skin
- b820 Repair functions of the skin
- b830 Other functions of the skin
- b840 Sensation related to the skin
- b849 Functions of the skin, other specified and unspecified

*Functions of the hair and nails (b850-b869)*

- b850 Functions of hair
- b860 Functions of nails
- b869 Functions of the hair and nails, other specified and unspecified
- b898 Functions of the skin and related structures, other specified
- b899 Functions of the skin and related structures, unspecified



# BODY STRUCTURES

## *Chapter 1 Structures of the nervous system*

- s110 Structure of brain
- s120 Spinal cord and related structures
- s130 Structure of meninges
- s140 Structure of sympathetic nervous system
- s150 Structure of parasympathetic nervous system
- s198 Structure of the nervous system, other specified
- s199 Structure of the nervous system, unspecified

## *Chapter 2 The eye, ear and related structures*

- s210 Structure of eye socket
- s220 Structure of eyeball
- s230 Structures around eye
- s240 Structure of external ear
- s250 Structure of middle ear
- s260 Structure of inner ear
- s298 Eye, ear and related structures, other specified
- s299 Eye, ear and related structures, unspecified

## *Chapter 3 Structures involved in voice and speech*

- s310 Structure of nose
- s320 Structure of mouth
- s330 Structure of pharynx
- s340 Structure of larynx
- s398 Structures involved in voice and speech, other specified
- s399 Structures involved in voice and speech, unspecified

## *Chapter 4 Structures of the cardiovascular, immunological and respiratory systems*

- s410 Structure of cardiovascular system
- s420 Structure of immune system
- s430 Structure of respiratory system
- s498 Structures of the cardiovascular, immunological and respiratory systems, other specified
- s499 Structures of the cardiovascular, immunological and respiratory systems, unspecified

## *Chapter 5 Structures related to the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems*

- s510 Structure of salivary glands
- s520 Structure of oesophagus
- s530 Structure of stomach
- s540 Structure of intestine
- s550 Structure of pancreas
- s560 Structure of liver

- s570 Structure of gall bladder and ducts
- s580 Structure of endocrine glands
- s598 Structures related to the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems, other specified
- s599 Structures related to the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems, unspecified

### ***Chapter 6 Structures related to the genitourinary and reproductive systems***

- s610 Structure of urinary system
- s620 Structure of pelvic floor
- s630 Structure of reproductive system
- s698 Structures related to the genitourinary and reproductive systems, other specified
- s699 Structures related to the genitourinary and reproductive systems, unspecified

### ***Chapter 7 Structures related to movement***

- s710 Structure of head and neck region
- s720 Structure of shoulder region
- s730 Structure of upper extremity
- s740 Structure of pelvic region
- s750 Structure of lower extremity
- s760 Structure of trunk
- s770 Additional musculoskeletal structures related to movement
- s798 Structures related to movement, other specified
- s799 Structures related to movement, unspecified

### ***Chapter 8 Skin and related structures***

- s810 Structure of areas of skin
- s820 Structure of skin glands
- s830 Structure of nails
- s840 Structure of hair
- s898 Skin and related structures, other specified
- s899 Skin and related structures, unspecified

# ACTIVITIES AND PARTICIPATION

## *Chapter 1 Learning and applying knowledge*

### *Purposeful sensory experiences (d110-d129)*

- d110 Watching
- d115 Listening
- d120 Other purposeful sensing
- d129 Purposeful sensory experiences, other specified and unspecified

### *Basic learning (d130-d159)*

- d130 Copying
- d135 Rehearsing
- d140 Learning to read
- d145 Learning to write
- d150 Learning to calculate
- d155 Acquiring skills
- d159 Basic learning, other specified and unspecified

### *Applying knowledge (d160-d179)*

- d160 Focusing attention
- d163 Thinking
- d166 Reading
- d170 Writing
- d172 Calculating
- d175 Solving problems
- d177 Making decisions
- d179 Applying knowledge, other specified and unspecified
- d198 Learning and applying knowledge, other specified
- d199 Learning and applying knowledge, unspecified

## *Chapter 2 General tasks and demands*

- d210 Undertaking a single task
- d220 Undertaking multiple tasks
- d230 Carrying out daily routine
- d240 Handling stress and other psychological demands
- d298 General tasks and demands, other specified
- d299 General tasks and demands, unspecified

## *Chapter 3 Communication*

### *Communicating - receiving (d310-d329)*

- d310 Communicating with - receiving - spoken messages
- d315 Communicating with - receiving - nonverbal messages
- d320 Communicating with - receiving - formal sign language messages
- d325 Communicating with - receiving - written messages
- d329 Communicating - receiving, other specified and unspecified



*Communicating - producing (d330-d349)*

- d330 Speaking
- d335 Producing nonverbal messages
- d340 Producing messages in formal sign language
- d345 Writing messages
- d349 Communication - producing, other specified and unspecified

*Conversation and use of communication devices and techniques (d350-d369)*

- d350 Conversation
- d355 Discussion
- d360 Using communication devices and techniques
- d369 Conversation and use of communication devices and techniques, other specified and unspecified
- d398 Communication, other specified
- d399 Communication, unspecified

## *Chapter 4 Mobility*

*Changing and maintaining body position (d410-d429)*

- d410 Changing basic body position
- d415 Maintaining a body position
- d420 Transferring oneself
- d429 Changing and maintaining body position, other specified and unspecified

*Carrying, moving and handling objects (d430-d449)*

- d430 Lifting and carrying objects
- d435 Moving objects with lower extremities
- d440 Fine hand use
- d445 Hand and arm use
- d449 Carrying, moving and handling objects, other specified and unspecified

*Walking and moving (d450-d469)*

- d450 Walking
- d455 Moving around
- d460 Moving around in different locations
- d465 Moving around using equipment
- d469 Walking and moving, other specified and unspecified

*Moving around using transportation (d470-d489)*

- d470 Using transportation
- d475 Driving
- d480 Riding animals for transportation
- d489 Moving around using transportation, other specified and unspecified
- d498 Mobility, other specified
- d499 Mobility, unspecified

## ***Chapter 5 Self-care***

- d510 Washing oneself
- d520 Caring for body parts
- d530 Toileting
- d540 Dressing
- d550 Eating
- d560 Drinking
- d570 Looking after one's health
- d598 Self-care, other specified
- d599 Self-care, unspecified

## ***Chapter 6 Domestic life***

### ***Acquisition of necessities (d610-d629)***

- d610 Acquiring a place to live
- d620 Acquisition of goods and services
- d629 Acquisition of necessities, other specified and unspecified

### ***Household tasks (d630-d649)***

- d630 Preparing meals
- d640 Doing housework
- d649 Household tasks, other specified and unspecified

### ***Caring for household objects and assisting others (d650-d669)***

- d650 Caring for household objects
- d660 Assisting others
- d669 Caring for household objects and assisting others, other specified and unspecified
- d698 Domestic life, other specified
- d699 Domestic life, unspecified

## ***Chapter 7 Interpersonal interactions and relationships***

### ***General interpersonal interactions (d710-d729)***

- d710 Basic interpersonal interactions
- d720 Complex interpersonal interactions
- d729 General interpersonal interactions, other specified and unspecified

### ***Particular interpersonal relationships (d730-d779)***

- d730 Relating with strangers
- d740 Formal relationships
- d750 Informal social relationships
- d760 Family relationships
- d770 Intimate relationships
- d779 Particular interpersonal relationships, other specified and unspecified
- d798 Interpersonal interactions and relationships, other specified
- d799 Interpersonal interactions and relationships, unspecified

## *Chapter 8 Major life areas*

### *Education (d810-d839)*

- d810 Informal education
- d815 Preschool education
- d820 School education
- d825 Vocational training
- d830 Higher education
- d839 Education, other specified and unspecified

### *Work and employment (d840-d859)*

- d840 Apprenticeship (work preparation)
- d845 Acquiring, keeping and terminating a job
- d850 Remunerative employment
- d855 Non-remunerative employment
- d859 Work and employment, other specified and unspecified

### *Economic life (d860-d879)*

- d860 Basic economic transactions
- d865 Complex economic transactions
- d870 Economic self-sufficiency
- d879 Economic life, other specified and unspecified
- d898 Major life areas, other specified
- d899 Major life areas, unspecified

## *Chapter 9 Community, social and civic life*

- d910 Community life
- d920 Recreation and leisure
- d930 Religion and spirituality
- d940 Human rights
- d950 Political life and citizenship
- d998 Community, social and civic life, other specified
- d999 Community, social and civic life, unspecified



# ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS

## *Chapter 1 Products and technology*

- e110 Products or substances for personal consumption
- e115 Products and technology for personal use in daily living
- e120 Products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation
- e125 Products and technology for communication
- e130 Products and technology for education
- e135 Products and technology for employment
- e140 Products and technology for culture, recreation and sport
- e145 Products and technology for the practice of religion and spirituality
- e150 Design, construction and building products and technology of buildings for public use
- e155 Design, construction and building products and technology of buildings for private use
- e160 Products and technology of land development
- e165 Assets
- e198 Products and technology, other specified
- e199 Products and technology, unspecified

## *Chapter 2 Natural environment and human-made changes to environment*

- e210 Physical geography
- e215 Population
- e220 Flora and fauna
- e225 Climate
- e230 Natural events
- e235 Human-caused events
- e240 Light
- e245 Time-related changes
- e250 Sound
- e255 Vibration
- e260 Air quality
- e298 Natural environment and human-made changes to environment, other specified
- e299 Natural environment and human-made changes to environment, unspecified

## *Chapter 3 Support and relationships*

- e310 Immediate family
- e315 Extended family
- e320 Friends
- e325 Acquaintances, peers colleagues, neighbours and community members
- e330 People in positions of authority
- e335 People in subordinate positions
- e340 Personal care providers and personal assistants
- e345 Strangers

- e350 Domesticated animals
- e355 Health professionals
- e360 Health-related professionals
- e398 Support and relationships, other specified
- e399 Support and relationships, unspecified

## *Chapter 4 Attitudes*

- e410 Individual attitudes of immediate family members
- e415 Individual attitudes of extended family members
- e420 Individual attitudes of friends
- e425 Individual attitudes of acquaintances, peers colleagues, neighbours and community members
- e430 Individual attitudes of people in positions of authority
- e435 Individual attitudes of people in subordinate positions
- e440 Individual attitudes of personal care providers and personal assistants
- e445 Individual attitudes of strangers
- e450 Individual attitudes of health professionals
- e455 Individual attitudes of health-related professionals
- e460 Societal attitudes
- e465 Social norms, practices and ideologies
- e498 Attitudes, other specified
- e499 Attitudes, unspecified

## *Chapter 5 Services, systems and policies*

- e510 Services, systems and policies for the production of consumer goods
- e515 Architecture and construction services, systems and policies
- e520 Open space planning services, systems and policies
- e525 Housing services, systems and policies
- e530 Utilities services, systems and policies
- e535 Communication services, systems and policies
- e540 Transportation services, systems and policies
- e545 Civil protection services, systems and policies
- e550 Legal services, systems and policies
- e555 Associations and organizational services, systems and policies
- e560 Media services, systems and policies
- e565 Economic services, systems and policies
- e570 Social security services, systems and policies
- e575 General social support services, systems and policies
- e580 Health services, systems and policies
- e585 Education and training services, systems and policies
- e590 Labour and employment services, systems and policies
- e595 Political services, systems and policies
- e598 Services, systems and policies, other specified
- e599 Services, systems and policies, unspecified

# ICF

## **Detailed classification with definitions**

**All categories within the  
classification with their definitions, inclusions  
and exclusions**





# BODY FUNCTIONS

*Definitions:      Body functions are the physiological functions of body systems (including psychological functions).*

*Impairments are problems in body function or structure as a significant deviation or loss.*

**Qualifier**

Generic qualifier with the negative scale, used to indicate the extent or magnitude of an impairment:

xxx.0	NO impairment	(none, absent, negligible,... )	0-4 %
xxx.1	MILD impairment	(slight, low,...)	5-24 %
xxx.2	MODERATE impairment	(medium, fair,...)	25-49 %
xxx.3	SEVERE impairment	(high, extreme, ...)	50-95 %
xxx.4	COMPLETE impairment	(total,...)	96-100 %
xxx.8	not specified		
xxx.9	not applicable		

Broad ranges of percentages are provided for those cases in which calibrated assessment instruments or other standards are available to quantify the impairment in body function. For example, when “no impairment” or “complete impairment” in body function is coded, this scaling may have margin of error of up to 5%. “Moderate impairment” is generally up to half of the scale of total impairment. The percentages are to be calibrated in different domains with reference to population standards as percentiles. For this quantification to be used in a uniform manner, assessment procedures need to be developed through research.

For a further explanation of coding conventions in ICF, refer to Annex 2.

# Chapter 1

## Mental functions

This chapter is about the functions of the brain: both global mental functions, such as consciousness, energy and drive, and specific mental functions, such as memory, language and calculation mental functions.

### *Global mental functions (b110-b139)*

#### **b 110**    **Consciousness functions**

General mental functions of the state of awareness and alertness, including the clarity and continuity of the wakeful state.

*Inclusions: functions of the state, continuity and quality of consciousness; loss of consciousness, coma, vegetative states, fugues, trance states, possession states, drug-induced altered consciousness, delirium, stupor*

*Exclusions: orientation functions (b114); energy and drive functions (b130); sleep functions (b134)*

##### **b 1100**    **State of consciousness**

Mental functions that when altered produce states such as clouding of consciousness, stupor or coma.

##### **b 1101**    **Continuity of consciousness**

Mental functions that produce sustained wakefulness, alertness and awareness and, when disrupted, may produce fugue, trance or other similar states.

##### **b 1102**    **Quality of consciousness**

Mental functions that when altered effect changes in the character of wakeful, alert and aware sentience, such as drug-induced altered states or delirium.

##### **b 1108**    **Consciousness functions, other specified**

##### **b 1109**    **Consciousness functions, unspecified**

#### **b 114**    **Orientation functions**

General mental functions of knowing and ascertaining one's relation to self, to others, to time and to one's surroundings.

*Inclusions: functions of orientation to time, place and person; orientation to self and others; disorientation to time, place and person*

*Exclusions: consciousness functions (b110); attention functions (b140); memory functions (b144)*



- b 1140 Orientation to time**  
Mental functions that produce awareness of day, date, month and year.
- b 1141 Orientation to place**  
Mental functions that produce awareness of one's location, such as one's immediate surroundings, one's town or country.
- b 1142 Orientation to person**  
Mental functions that produce awareness of one's own identity and of individuals in the immediate environment.
  - b 11420 Orientation to self**  
Mental functions that produce awareness of one's own identity.
  - b 11421 Orientation to others**  
Mental functions that produce awareness of the identity of other individuals in one's immediate environment .
  - b 11428 Orientation to person, other specified**
  - b 11429 Orientation to person, unspecified**
- b 1148 Orientation functions, other specified**
- b 1149 Orientation functions, unspecified**

**b 117 Intellectual functions**  
General mental functions, required to understand and constructively integrate the various mental functions, including all cognitive functions and their development over the life span.

*Inclusions: functions of intellectual growth; intellectual retardation, mental retardation, dementia*

*Exclusions: memory functions (b 144); thought functions (b 160); higher-level cognitive functions (b 164)*

**b 122 Global psychosocial functions**  
General mental functions, as they develop over the life span, required to understand and constructively integrate the mental functions that lead to the formation of the interpersonal skills needed to establish reciprocal social interactions, in terms of both meaning and purpose.

*Inclusion: such as in autism*

**b 126 Temperament and personality functions**

General mental functions of constitutional disposition of the individual to react in a particular way to situations, including the set of mental characteristics that makes the individual distinct from others.

*Inclusions: functions of extraversion, introversion, agreeableness, conscientiousness, psychic and emotional stability, and openness to experience; optimism; novelty seeking; confidence; trustworthiness*

*Exclusions: intellectual functions (b117); energy and drive functions (b130); psychomotor functions (b147); emotional functions (b152)*

**b 1260 Extraversion**

Mental functions that produce a personal disposition that is outgoing, sociable and demonstrative, as contrasted to being shy, restricted and inhibited.

**b 1261 Agreeableness**

Mental functions that produce a personal disposition that is cooperative, amicable, and accommodating, as contrasted to being unfriendly, oppositional and defiant.

**b 1262 Conscientiousness**

Mental functions that produce personal dispositions such as in being hard-working, methodical and scrupulous, as contrasted to mental functions producing dispositions such as in being lazy, unreliable and irresponsible.

**b 1263 Psychic stability**

Mental functions that produce a personal disposition that is even-tempered, calm and composed, as contrasted to being irritable, worried, erratic and moody.

**b 1264 Openness to experience**

Mental functions that produce a personal disposition that is curious, imaginative, inquisitive and experience-seeking, as contrasted to being stagnant, inattentive and emotionally inexpressive.

**b 1265 Optimism**

Mental functions that produce a personal disposition that is cheerful, buoyant and hopeful, as contrasted to being downhearted, gloomy and despairing.

**b 1266 Confidence**

Mental functions that produce a personal disposition that is self-assured, bold and assertive, as contrasted to being timid, insecure and self-effacing.

**b 1267 Trustworthiness**

Mental functions that produce a personal disposition that is dependable and principled, as contrasted to being deceitful and antisocial.

**b 1268 Temperament and personality functions, other specified****b 1269 Temperament and personality functions, unspecified****b 130 Energy and drive functions**

General mental functions of physiological and psychological mechanisms that cause the individual to move towards satisfying specific needs and general goals in a persistent manner.

*Inclusions: functions of energy level, motivation, appetite, craving (including craving for substances that can be abused), and impulse control*

*Exclusions: consciousness functions (b110); temperament and personality functions (b126); sleep functions (b134); psychomotor functions (b147); emotional functions (b152)*

**b 1300 Energy level**

Mental functions that produce vigour and stamina.

**b 1301 Motivation**

Mental functions that produce the incentive to act; the conscious or unconscious driving force for action.

**b 1302 Appetite**

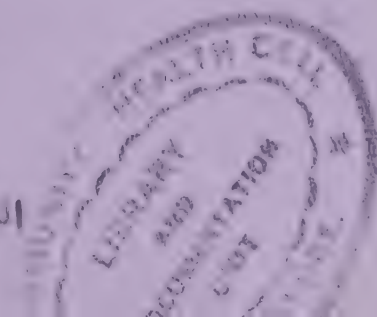
Mental functions that produce a natural longing or desire, especially the natural and recurring desire for food and drink.

**b 1303 Craving**

Mental functions that produce the urge to consume substances, including substances that can be abused.

**b 1304 Impulse control**

Mental functions that regulate and resist sudden intense urges to do something.

**b 1308 Energy and drive functions, other specified**



**b 1309 Energy and drive functions, unspecified****b 134 Sleep functions**

General mental functions of periodic, reversible and selective physical and mental disengagement from one's immediate environment accompanied by characteristic physiological changes.

*Inclusions: functions of amount of sleeping, and onset, maintenance and quality of sleep; functions involving the sleep cycle, such as in insomnia, hypersomnia and narcolepsy*

*Exclusions: consciousness functions (b110); energy and drive functions (b130); attention functions (b140); psychomotor functions (b147)*

**b 1340 Amount of sleep**

Mental functions involved in the time spent in the state of sleep in the diurnal cycle or circadian rhythm.

**b 1341 Onset of sleep**

Mental functions that produce the transition between wakefulness and sleep.

**b 1342 Maintenance of sleep**

Mental functions that sustain the state of being asleep.

**b 1343 Quality of sleep**

Mental functions that produce the natural sleep leading to optimal physical and mental rest and relaxation.

**b 1344 Functions involving the sleep cycle**

Mental functions that produce rapid eye movement (REM) sleep (associated with dreaming) and non-rapid eye movement sleep (NREM) (characterized by the traditional concept of sleep as a time of decreased physiological and psychological activity).

**b 1348 Sleep functions, other specified****b 1349 Sleep functions, unspecified****b 139 Global mental functions, other specified and unspecified**

## Specific mental functions (b140-b189)

### **b 140** Attention functions

Specific mental functions of focusing on an external stimulus or internal experience for the required period of time.

*Inclusions: functions of sustaining attention, shifting attention, dividing attention, sharing attention; concentration; distractibility*

*Exclusions: consciousness functions (b110); energy and drive functions (b130); sleep functions (b134); memory functions (b144); psychomotor functions (b147); perceptual functions (b156)*

#### **b 1400** Sustaining attention

Mental functions that produce concentration for the period of time required.

#### **b 1401** Shifting attention

Mental functions that permit refocusing concentration from one stimulus to another.

#### **b 1402** Dividing attention

Mental functions that permit focusing on two or more stimuli at the same time.

#### **b 1403** Sharing attention

Mental functions that permit focusing on the same stimulus by two or more people, such as a child and a caregiver both focusing on a toy.

#### **b 1408** Attention functions, other specified

#### **b 1409** Attention functions, unspecified

### **b 144** Memory functions

Specific mental functions of registering and storing information and retrieving it as needed.

*Inclusions: functions of short-term and long-term memory, immediate, recent and remote memory; memory span; retrieval of memory; remembering; functions used in recalling and learning, such as in nominal, selective and dissociative amnesia*

*Exclusions: consciousness functions (b110); orientation functions (b114); intellectual functions (b117); attention functions (b140); perceptual functions (b156); thought functions (b160); higher-level cognitive functions (b164); mental functions of language (b167); calculation functions (b172)*

**b 1440 Short-term memory**

Mental functions that produce a temporary, disruptable memory store of around 30 seconds duration from which information is lost if not consolidated into long-term memory.

**b 1441 Long-term memory**

Mental functions that produce a memory system permitting the long-term storage of information from short-term memory and both autobiographical memory for past events and semantic memory for language and facts.

**b 1442 Retrieval of memory**

Specific mental functions of recalling information stored in long-term memory and bringing it into awareness.

**b 1448 Memory functions, other specified****b 1449 Memory functions, unspecified****b 147 Psychomotor functions**

Specific mental functions of control over both motor and psychological events at the body level.

*Inclusions: functions of psychomotor control, such as psychomotor retardation, excitement and agitation, posturing, catatonia, negativism, ambitendency, echopraxia and echolalia; quality of psychomotor function*

*Exclusions: consciousness functions (b110); orientation functions (b114); intellectual functions (b117); energy and drive functions (b130); attention functions (b140); mental functions of language (b167); mental functions of sequencing complex movements (b176)*

**b 1470 Psychomotor control**

Mental functions that regulate the speed of behaviour or response time that involves both motor and psychological components, such as in disruption of control producing psychomotor retardation (moving and speaking slowly; decrease in gesturing and spontaneity) or psychomotor excitement (excessive behavioural and cognitive activity, usually nonproductive and often in response to inner tension as in toe-tapping, hand-wringing, agitation, or restlessness.)

**b 1471 Quality of psychomotor functions**

Mental functions that produce nonverbal behaviour in the proper sequence and character of its subcomponents, such as hand and eye coordination, or gait.

**b 1478 Psychomotor functions, other specified**



**b 1479 Psychomotor functions, unspecified****b 152 Emotional functions**

Specific mental functions related to the feeling and affective components of the processes of the mind.

*Inclusions: functions of appropriateness of emotion, regulation and range of emotion; affect; sadness, happiness, love, fear, anger, hate, tension, anxiety, joy, sorrow; lability of emotion; flattening of affect*

*Exclusions: temperament and personality functions (b126); energy and drive functions (b130)*

**b 1520 Appropriateness of emotion**

Mental functions that produce congruence of feeling or affect with the situation, such as happiness at receiving good news.

**b 1521 Regulation of emotion**

Mental functions that control the experience and display of affect.

**b 1522 Range of emotion**

Mental functions that produce the spectrum of experience of arousal of affect or feelings such as love, hate, anxiousness, sorrow, joy, fear and anger.

**b 1528 Emotional functions, other specified****b 1529 Emotional functions, unspecified****b 156 Perceptual functions**

Specific mental functions of recognizing and interpreting sensory stimuli.

*Inclusions: functions of auditory, visual, olfactory, gustatory, tactile and visuospatial perception, such as hallucination or illusion*

*Exclusions: consciousness functions (b110); orientation functions (b114); attention functions (b140); memory functions (b144); mental functions of language (b167); seeing and related functions (b210-b229); hearing and vestibular functions (b230-b249); additional sensory functions (b250-b279)*

**b 1560 Auditory perception**

Mental functions involved in discriminating sounds, tones, pitches and other acoustic stimuli.

- b 1561 Visual perception**  
Mental functions involved in discriminating shape, size, colour and other ocular stimuli.
- b 1562 Olfactory perception**  
Mental functions involved in distinguishing differences in smells.
- b 1563 Gustatory perception**  
Mental functions involved in distinguishing differences in tastes, such as sweet, sour, salty and bitter stimuli, detected by the tongue.
- b 1564 Tactile perception**  
Mental functions involved in distinguishing differences in texture, such as rough or smooth stimuli, detected by touch.
- b 1565 Visuospatial perception**  
Mental function involved in distinguishing by sight the relative position of objects in the environment or in relation to oneself.
- b 1568 Perceptual functions, other specified**
- b 1569 Perceptual functions, unspecified**

**b 160****Thought functions**

Specific mental functions related to the ideational component of the mind.

*Inclusions: functions of pace, form, control and content of thought; goal-directed thought functions, non-goal directed thought functions; logical thought functions, such as pressure of thought, flight of ideas, thought block, incoherence of thought, tangentiality, circumstantiality, delusions, obsessions and compulsions*

*Exclusions: intellectual functions (b117); memory functions (b144); psychomotor functions (b147); perceptual functions (b156); higher-level cognitive functions (b164); mental functions of language (b167); calculation functions (b172)*

**b 1600 Pace of thought**

Mental functions that govern speed of the thinking process.

**b 1601 Form of thought**

Mental functions that organize the thinking process as to its coherence and logic.

*Inclusions: impairments of ideational perseveration, tangentiality and circumstantiality*

**b 1602 Content of thought**

Mental functions consisting of the ideas that are present in the thinking process and what is being conceptualized.

*Inclusions: impairments of delusions, overvalued ideas and somatization*

**b 1603 Control of thought**

Mental functions that provide volitional control of thinking and are recognized as such by the person.

*Inclusions: impairments of rumination, obsession, thought broadcast and thought insertion*

**b 1608 Thought functions, other specified****b 1609 Thought functions, unspecified****b 164 Higher-level cognitive functions**

Specific mental functions especially dependent on the frontal lobes of the brain, including complex goal-directed behaviours such as decision-making, abstract thinking, planning and carrying out plans, mental flexibility, and deciding which behaviours are appropriate under what circumstances; often called executive functions.

*Inclusions: functions of abstraction and organization of ideas; time management, insight and judgement; concept formation, categorization and cognitive flexibility*

*Exclusions: memory functions (b144); thought functions (b160); mental functions of language (b167); calculation functions (b172)*

**b 1640 Abstraction**

Mental functions of creating general ideas, qualities or characteristics out of, and distinct from, concrete realities, specific objects or actual instances.

**b 1641 Organization and planning**

Mental functions of coordinating parts into a whole, of systematizing; the mental function involved in developing a method of proceeding or acting.



- b 1642 Time management**  
Mental functions of ordering events in chronological sequence, allocating amounts of time to events and activities.
- b 1643 Cognitive flexibility**  
Mental functions of changing strategies, or shifting mental sets, especially as involved in problem-solving.
- b 1644 Insight**  
Mental functions of awareness and understanding of oneself and one's behaviour.
- b 1645 Judgement**  
Mental functions involved in discriminating between and evaluating different options, such as those involved in forming an opinion.
- b 1646 Problem-solving**  
Mental functions of identifying, analysing and integrating incongruent or conflicting information into a solution.
- b 1648 Higher-level cognitive functions, other specified**
- b 1649 Higher-level cognitive functions, unspecified**

**b 167 Mental functions of language**  
Specific mental functions of recognizing and using signs, symbols and other components of a language.

*Inclusions: functions of reception and decryption of spoken, written or other forms of language such as sign language; functions of expression of spoken, written or other forms of language; integrative language functions, spoken and written, such as involved in receptive, expressive, Broca's, Wernicke's and conduction aphasia*

*Exclusions: attention functions (b140); memory functions (b144); perceptual functions (b156); thought functions (b160); higher-level cognitive functions (b164); calculation functions (b172); mental functions of complex movements (b176); Chapter 2 Sensory Functions and Pain; Chapter 3 Voice and Speech Functions*

- b 1670 Reception of language**  
Specific mental functions of decoding messages in spoken, written or other forms, such as sign language, to obtain their meaning.

- b 16700 Reception of spoken language**  
Mental functions of decoding spoken messages to obtain their meaning.
- b 16701 Reception of written language**  
Mental functions of decoding written messages to obtain their meaning.
- b 16702 Reception of sign language**  
Mental functions of decoding messages in languages that use signs made by hands and other movements, in order to obtain their meaning.
- b 16708 Reception of language, other specified**
- b 16709 Reception of language, unspecified**
- b 1671 Expression of language**  
Specific mental functions necessary to produce meaningful messages in spoken, written, signed or other forms of language.
  - b 16710 Expression of spoken language**  
Mental functions necessary to produce meaningful spoken messages.
  - b 16711 Expression of written language**  
Mental functions necessary to produce meaningful written messages.
  - b 16712 Expression of sign language**  
Mental functions necessary to produce meaningful messages in languages that use signs made by hands and other movements.
  - b 16718 Expression of language, other specified**
  - b 16719 Expression of language, unspecified**
- b 1672 Integrative language functions**  
Mental functions that organize semantic and symbolic meaning, grammatical structure and ideas for the production of messages in spoken, written or other forms of language.
- b 1678 Mental functions of language, other specified**
- b 1679 Mental functions of language, unspecified**

**b 172 Calculation functions**

Specific mental functions of determination, approximation and manipulation of mathematical symbols and processes.

*Inclusions: functions of addition, subtraction, and other simple mathematical calculations; functions of complex mathematical operations*

*Exclusions: attention functions (b140); memory functions (b144); thought functions (b160); higher-level cognitive functions (b164); mental functions of language (b167)*

**b 1720 Simple calculation**

Mental functions of computing with numbers, such as addition, subtraction, multiplication and division.

**b 1721 Complex calculation**

Mental functions of translating word problems into arithmetic procedures, translating mathematical formulas into arithmetic procedures, and other complex manipulations involving numbers.

**b 1728 Calculation functions, other specified****b 1729 Calculation functions, unspecified****b 176 Mental function of sequencing complex movements**

Specific mental functions of sequencing and coordinating complex, purposeful movements.

*Inclusions: impairments such as in ideation, ideomotor, dressing, oculomotor and speech apraxia*

*Exclusions: psychomotor functions (b147); higher-level cognitive functions (b164); Chapter 7 Neuromusculoskeletal and Movement-Related Functions*

**b 180 Experience of self and time functions**

Specific mental functions related to the awareness of one's identity, one's body, one's position in the reality of one's environment and of time.

*Inclusions: functions of experience of self, body image and time*

**b 1800 Experience of self**

Specific mental functions of being aware of one's own identity and one's position in the reality of the environment around oneself.

*Inclusion: impairments such as depersonalization and derealization*



**b 1801 Body image**

Specific mental functions related to the representation and awareness of one's body.

*Inclusion: impairments such as phantom limb and feeling too fat or too thin*

**b 1802 Experience of time**

Specific mental functions of the subjective experiences related to the length and passage of time.

*Inclusion: impairments such as jamais vu and déjà vu*

**b 1808 Experience of self and time functions, other specified****b 1809 Experience of self and time functions, unspecified****b 189 Specific mental functions, other specified and unspecified****b 198 Mental functions, other specified****b 199 Mental functions, unspecified**

## Chapter 2

# Sensory functions and pain

This chapter is about the functions of the senses, seeing, hearing, tasting and so on, as well as the sensation of pain.

## *Seeing and related functions (b210-b229)*

### **b 210** Seeing functions

Sensory functions relating to sensing the presence of light and sensing the form, size, shape and colour of the visual stimuli.

*Inclusions: visual acuity functions; visual field functions; quality of vision; functions of sensing light and colour, visual acuity of distant and near vision, monocular and binocular vision; visual picture quality; impairments such as myopia, hypermetropia, astigmatism, hemianopia, colour-blindness, tunnel vision, central and peripheral scotoma, diplopia, night blindness and impaired adaptability to light*

*Exclusion: perceptual functions (b156)*

### **b 2100** Visual acuity functions

Seeing functions of sensing form and contour, both binocular and monocular, for both distant and near vision.

#### **b 21000** Binocular acuity of distant vision

Seeing functions of sensing size, form and contour, using both eyes, for objects distant from the eye.

#### **b 21001** Monocular acuity of distant vision

Seeing functions of sensing size, form and contour, using either right or left eye alone, for objects distant from the eye.

#### **b 21002** Binocular acuity of near vision

Seeing functions of sensing size, form and contour, using both eyes, for objects close to the eye.

#### **b 21003** Monocular acuity of near vision

Seeing functions of sensing size, form and contour, using either right or left eye alone, for objects close to the eye.

#### **b 21008** Visual acuity functions, other specified

#### **b 21009** Visual acuity functions, unspecified

**b 2101 Visual field functions**

Seeing functions related to the entire area that can be seen with fixation of gaze.

*Inclusions: impairments such as in scotoma, tunnel vision, anopsia*

**b 2102 Quality of vision**

Seeing functions involving light sensitivity, colour vision, contrast sensitivity and the overall quality of the picture.

**b 21020 Light sensitivity**

Seeing functions of sensing a minimum amount of light (light minimum), and the minimum difference in intensity (light difference.)

*Inclusions: functions of dark adaptation; impairments such as night blindness (hyposensitivity to light) and photophobia (hypersensitivity to light)*

**b 21021 Colour vision**

Seeing functions of differentiating and matching colours.

**b 21022 Contrast sensitivity**

Seeing functions of separating figure from ground, involving the minimum amount of luminance required.

**b 21023 Visual picture quality**

Seeing functions involving the quality of the picture.

*Inclusions: impairments such as in seeing stray lights, affected picture quality (floaters or webbing), picture distortion, and seeing stars or flashes*

**b 21028 Quality of vision, other specified****b 21029 Quality of vision, unspecified****b 2108 Seeing functions, other specified****b 2109 Seeing functions, unspecified**



**b 215** Functions of structures adjoining the eye

Functions of structures in and around the eye that facilitate seeing functions.

*Inclusions: functions of internal muscles of the eye, eyelid, external muscles of the eye, including voluntary and tracking movements and fixation of the eye, lachrymal glands, accommodation, pupillary reflex; impairments such as in nystagmus, xerophthalmia and ptosis*

*Exclusions: seeing functions (b210); Chapter 7 Neuromusculoskeletal and Movement-related Functions*

**b 2150** Functions of internal muscles of the eye

Functions of the muscles inside the eye, such as the iris, that adjust the shape and size of the pupil and lens of the eye.

*Inclusions: functions of accommodation; pupillary reflex*

**b 2151** Functions of the eyelid

Functions of the eyelid, such as the protective reflex.

**b 2152** Functions of external muscles of the eye

Functions of the muscles that are used to look in different directions, to follow an object as it moves across the visual field, to produce saccadic jumps to catch up with a moving target, and to fix the eye.

*Inclusions: nystagmus; cooperation of both eyes*

**b 2153** Functions of lachrymal glands

Functions of the tear glands and ducts.

**b 2158** Functions of structures adjoining the eye, other specified**b 2159** Functions of structures adjoining the eye, unspecified**b 220** Sensations associated with the eye and adjoining structures

Sensations of tired, dry and itching eye and related feelings.

*Inclusions: feelings of pressure behind the eye, of something in the eye, eye strain, burning in the eye; eye irritation*

*Exclusion: sensation of pain (b280)*

**b 229** Seeing and related functions, other specified and unspecified

## Hearing and vestibular functions (b230-b249)

### **b 230** Hearing functions

Sensory functions relating to sensing the presence of sounds and discriminating the location, pitch, loudness and quality of sounds.

*Inclusions: functions of hearing, auditory discrimination, localization of sound source, lateralization of sound, speech discrimination; impairments such as deafness, hearing impairment and hearing loss*

*Exclusions: perceptual functions (b156) and mental functions of language (b167)*

#### **b 2300** Sound detection

Sensory functions relating to sensing the presence of sounds.

#### **b 2301** Sound discrimination

Sensory functions relating to sensing the presence of sound involving the differentiation of ground and binaural synthesis, separation and blending.

#### **b 2302** Localisation of sound source

Sensory functions relating to determining the location of the source of sound.

#### **b 2303** Lateralization of sound

Sensory functions relating to determining whether the sound is coming from the right or left side.

#### **b 2304** Speech discrimination

Sensory functions relating to determining spoken language and distinguishing it from other sounds.

#### **b 2308** Hearing functions, other specified

#### **b 2309** Hearing functions, unspecified

### **b 235** Vestibular functions

Sensory functions of the inner ear related to position, balance and movement.

*Inclusions: functions of position and positional sense; functions of balance of the body and movement*

*Exclusion: sensation associated with hearing and vestibular functions (b240)*

**b 2350 Vestibular function of position**

Sensory functions of the inner ear related to determining the position of the body.

**b 2351 Vestibular function of balance**

Sensory functions of the inner ear related to determining the balance of the body.

**b 2352 Vestibular function of determination of movement**

Sensory functions of the inner ear related to determining movement of the body, including its direction and speed.

**b 2358 Vestibular functions, other specified****b 2359 Vestibular functions, unspecified****b 240 Sensations associated with hearing and vestibular function**

Sensations of dizziness, falling, tinnitus and vertigo.

*Inclusions: sensations of ringing in ears, irritation in ear, aural pressure, nausea associated with dizziness or vertigo*

*Exclusions: vestibular functions (b235); sensation of pain (b280)*

**b 2400 Ringing in ears or tinnitus**

Sensation of low-pitched rushing, hissing or ringing in the ear.

**b 2401 Dizziness**

Sensation of motion involving either oneself or one's environment; sensation of rotating, swaying or tilting.

**b 2402 Sensation of falling**

Sensation of losing one's grip and falling.

**b 2403 Nausea associated with dizziness or vertigo**

Sensation of wanting to vomit that arises from dizziness or vertigo.

**b 2404 Irritation in the ear**

Sensation of itching or other similar sensations in the ear.

**b 2405 Aural pressure**

Sensation of pressure in the ear.

**b 2408 Sensations associated with hearing and vestibular function, other specified**



**b 2409** Sensations associated with hearing and vestibular function, unspecified

**b 249** Hearing and vestibular functions, other specified and unspecified

## *Additional sensory functions (b250-b279)*

**b 250** Taste function

Sensory functions of sensing qualities of bitterness, sweetness, sourness and saltiness.

*Inclusions: gustatory functions; impairments such as ageusia and hypogeusia*

**b 255** Smell function

Sensory functions of sensing odours and smells.

*Inclusions: olfactory functions; impairments such as anosmia or hyposmia*

**b 260** Proprioceptive function

Sensory functions of sensing the relative position of body parts.

*Inclusions: functions of statesthesia and kinaesthesia*

*Exclusions: vestibular functions (b235); sensations related to muscles and movement functions (b780)*

**b 265** Touch function

Sensory functions of sensing surfaces and their texture or quality.

*Inclusions: functions of touching, feeling of touch; impairments such as numbness, anaesthesia, tingling, paraesthesia and hyperaesthesia*

*Exclusions: sensory functions related to temperature and other stimuli (b270)*

**b 270** Sensory functions related to temperature and other stimuli

Sensory functions of sensing temperature, vibration, pressure and noxious stimulus.

*Inclusions: functions of being sensitive to temperature, vibration, shaking or oscillation, superficial pressure, deep pressure, burning sensation or a noxious stimulus*

*Exclusions: touch functions (b265); sensation of pain (b280)*

**b 2700** Sensitivity to temperature

Sensory functions of sensing cold and heat.

- b 2701 Sensitivity to vibration**  
Sensory functions of sensing shaking or oscillation.
- b 2702 Sensitivity to pressure**  
Sensory functions of sensing pressure against or on the skin.  
*Inclusions: impairments such as sensitivity to touch, numbness, hypaesthesia, hyperaesthesia, paraesthesia and tingling*
- b 2703 Sensitivity to a noxious stimulus**  
Sensory functions of sensing painful or uncomfortable sensations.  
*Inclusions: impairments such as hypalgesia, hyperpathia, allodynia, analgesia and anaesthesia dolorosa*
- b 2708 Sensory functions related to temperature and other stimuli, other specified**
- b 2709 Sensory functions related to temperature and other stimuli, unspecified**

**b 279** Additional sensory functions, other specified and unspecified

## *Pain (b280-b289)*

- b 280 Sensation of pain**  
Sensation of unpleasant feeling indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure.  
*Inclusions: sensations of generalized or localized pain, in one or more body part, pain in a dermatome, stabbing pain, burning pain, dull pain, aching pain; impairments such as myalgia, analgesia and hyperalgesia*
- b 2800 Generalized pain**  
Sensation of unpleasant feeling indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure felt all over, or throughout the body.
- b 2801 Pain in body part**  
Sensation of unpleasant feeling indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure felt in a specific part, or parts, of the body.

**b 28010 Pain in head and neck**

Sensation of unpleasant feeling indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure felt in the head and neck.

**b 28011 Pain in chest**

Sensation of unpleasant feeling indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure felt in the chest.

**b 28012 Pain in stomach or abdomen**

Sensation of unpleasant feeling indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure felt in the stomach or abdomen.

*Inclusion: pain in the pelvic region*

**b 28013 Pain in back**

Sensation of unpleasant feeling indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure felt in the back.

*Inclusions: pain in the trunk; low backache*

**b 28014 Pain in upper limb**

Sensation of unpleasant feeling indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure felt in either one or both upper limbs, including hands.

**b 28015 Pain in lower limb**

Sensation of unpleasant feeling indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure felt in either one or both lower limbs, including feet.

**b 28016 Pain in joints**

Sensation of unpleasant feeling indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure felt in one or more joints, including small and big joints.

*Inclusions: pain in the hip; pain in the shoulder*

**b 28018 Pain in body part, other specified****b 28019 Pain in body part, unspecified****b 2802 Pain in multiple body parts**

Unpleasant sensation indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure located in several body parts.

**b 2803 Radiating pain in a dermatome**

Unpleasant sensation indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure located in areas of skin served by the same nerve root.

**b 2804 Radiating pain in a segment or region**

Unpleasant sensation indicating potential or actual damage to some body structure located in areas of skin in different body parts not served by the same nerve root.

**b 289 Sensation of pain, other specified and unspecified****b 298 Sensory functions and pain, other specified****b 299 Sensory functions and pain, unspecified**



## Chapter 3

# Voice and speech functions

This chapter is about the functions of producing sounds and speech.

### **b 310** Voice functions

Functions of the production of various sounds by the passage of air through the larynx.

*Inclusions: functions of production and quality of voice; functions of phonation, pitch, loudness and other qualities of voice; impairments such as aphonia, dysphonia, hoarseness, hypernasality and hyponasality*

*Exclusions: mental functions of language (b167); articulation functions (b320)*

#### **b 3100** Production of voice

Functions of the production of sound made through coordination of the larynx and surrounding muscles with the respiratory system.

*Inclusions: functions of phonation, loudness; impairment of aphonia*

#### **b 3101** Quality of voice

Functions of the production of characteristics of voice including pitch, resonance and other features.

*Inclusions: functions of high or low pitch; impairments such as hypernasality, hyponasality, dysphonia, hoarseness or harshness*

#### **b 3108** Voice functions, other specified

#### **b 3109** Voice functions, unspecified

### **b 320** Articulation functions

Functions of the production of speech sounds.

*Inclusions: functions of enunciation, articulation of phonemes; spastic, ataxic, flaccid dysarthria; anarthria*

*Exclusions: mental functions of language (b167); voice functions (b310)*

**b 330 Fluency and rhythm of speech functions**

Functions of the production of flow and tempo of speech.

*Inclusions: functions of fluency, rhythm, speed and melody of speech; prosody and intonation; impairments such as stuttering, stammering, cluttering, bradylalia and tachylalia*

*Exclusions: mental functions of language (b167); voice functions (b310); articulation functions (b320)*

**b 3300 Fluency of speech**

Functions of the production of smooth, uninterrupted flow of speech.

*Inclusions: functions of smooth connection of speech; impairments such as stuttering, stammering, cluttering, dysfluency, repetition of sounds, words or parts of words and irregular breaks in speech*

**b 3301 Rhythm of speech**

Functions of the modulated, tempo and stress patterns in speech.

*Inclusions: impairments such as stereotypic or repetitive speech cadence*

**b 3302 Speed of speech**

Functions of the rate of speech production.

*Inclusions: impairments such as bradylalia and tachylalia*

**b 3303 Melody of speech**

Functions of modulation of pitch patterns in speech.

*Inclusions: prosody of speech, intonation, melody of speech; impairments such as monotone speech*

**b 3308 Fluency and rhythm of speech functions, other specified****b 3309 Fluency and rhythm of speech functions, unspecified****b 340 Alternative vocalization functions**

Functions of the production of other manners of vocalization.

*Inclusions: functions of the production of notes and range of sounds, such as in singing, chanting, babbling and humming; crying aloud and screaming*

*Exclusions: mental functions of language (b167); voice functions (b310); articulation functions (b320); fluency and rhythm of speech functions (b330)*

**b 3400 Production of notes**

Functions of production of musical vocal sounds.

*Inclusions: sustaining, modulating and terminating production of single or connected vocalizations with variation in pitch such as in singing, humming and chanting*

**b 3401 Making a range of sounds**

Functions of production of a variety of vocalizations.

*Inclusion: functions of babbling in children*

**b 3408 Alternative vocalization functions, other specified****b 3409 Alternative vocalization functions, unspecified****b 398 Voice and speech functions, other specified****b 399 Voice and speech functions, unspecified**

## Chapter 4

# Functions of the cardiovascular, haematological, immunological and respiratory systems

This chapter is about the functions involved in the cardiovascular system (functions of the heart and blood vessels), the haematological and immunological systems (functions of blood production and immunity), and the respiratory system (functions of respiration and exercise tolerance).

### *Functions of the cardiovascular system (b410-b429)*

#### **b 410** Heart functions

Functions of pumping the blood in adequate or required amounts and pressure throughout the body.

*Inclusions: functions of heart rate, rhythm and output; contraction force of ventricular muscles; functions of heart valves; pumping the blood through the pulmonary circuit; dynamics of circulation to the heart; impairments such as tachycardia, bradycardia and irregular heart beat and as in heart failure, cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, and coronary insufficiency*

*Exclusions: blood vessel functions (b415); blood pressure functions (b420); exercise tolerance functions (b455)*

#### **b 4100** Heart rate

Functions related to the number of times the heart contracts every minute.

*Inclusions: impairments such as rates that are too fast (tachycardia) or too slow (bradycardia)*

#### **b 4101** Heart rhythm

Functions related to the regularity of the beating of the heart.

*Inclusions: impairments such as arrhythmias*

#### **b 4102** Contraction force of ventricular muscles

Functions related to the amount of blood pumped by the ventricular muscles during every beat.

*Inclusions: impairments such as diminished cardiac output*



**b 4103 Blood supply to the heart**  
Functions related to the volume of blood available to the heart muscle.

*Inclusion: impairments such as coronary ischaemia*

**b 4108 Heart functions, other specified**

**b 4109 Heart functions, unspecified**

**b 415 Blood vessel functions**

Functions of transporting blood throughout the body.

*Inclusions: functions of arteries, capillaries and veins; vasomotor function; functions of pulmonary arteries, capillaries and veins; functions of valves of veins; impairments such as in blockage or constriction of arteries; atherosclerosis, arteriosclerosis, thromboembolism and varicose veins*

*Exclusions: heart functions (b410); blood pressure functions (b420); haematological system functions (b430); exercise tolerance functions (b455)*

**b 4150 Functions of arteries**  
functions related to blood flow in the arteries

*Inclusions: impairments such as arterial dilation; arterial constriction such as in intermittent claudication*

**b 4151 Functions of capillaries**  
Functions related to blood flow in the capillaries.

**b 4152 Functions of veins**  
Functions related to blood flow in the veins, and the functions of valves of veins.

*Inclusions: impairments such as venous dilation; venous constriction; insufficient closing of valves as in varicose veins*

**b 4158 Blood vessel functions, other specified**

**b 4159 Blood vessel functions, unspecified**

**b 420 Blood pressure functions**

Functions of maintaining the pressure of blood within the arteries.

*Inclusions: functions of maintenance of blood pressure; increased and decreased blood pressure; impairments such as in hypotension, hypertension and postural hypotension*

*Exclusions: heart functions (b410); blood vessel functions (b415); exercise tolerance functions (b455)*

**b 4200 Increased blood pressure**

Functions related to a rise in systolic or diastolic blood pressure above normal for the age.

**b 4201 Decreased blood pressure**

Functions related to a fall in systolic or diastolic blood pressure below normal for the age.

**b 4202 Maintenance of blood pressure**

Functions related to maintaining an appropriate blood pressure in response to changes in the body.

**b 4208 Blood pressure functions, other specified****b 4209 Blood pressure functions, unspecified****b 429 Functions of the cardiovascular system, other specified and unspecified**

## *Functions of the haematological and immunological systems (b430-b439)*

**b 430 Haematological system functions**

Functions of blood production, oxygen and metabolite carriage, and clotting.

*Inclusions: functions of the production of blood and bone marrow; oxygen-carrying functions of blood; blood-related functions of spleen; metabolite-carrying functions of blood; clotting; impairments such as anaemia, haemophilia and other clotting dysfunctions*

*Exclusions: functions of the cardiovascular system (b410-b429); immunological system functions (b435); exercise tolerance functions (b455)*

**b 4300 Production of blood**

Functions related to the production of blood and all its constituents.

- b 4301 Oxygen-carrying functions of the blood**  
Functions related to the blood's capacity to carry oxygen throughout the body.
- b 4302 Metabolite-carrying functions of the blood**  
Functions related to the blood's capacity to carry metabolites throughout the body.
- b 4303 Clotting functions**  
Functions related to the coagulation of blood, such as at a site of injury.
- b 4308 Haematological system functions, other specified**
- b 4309 Haematological system functions, unspecified**

**b 435 Immunological system functions**

Functions of the body related to protection against foreign substances, including infections, by specific and non-specific immune responses.

*Inclusions: immune response (specific and non-specific); hypersensitivity reactions; functions of lymphatic vessels and nodes; functions of cell-mediated immunity, antibody-mediated immunity; response to immunization; impairments such as in autoimmunity, allergic reactions, lymphadenitis and lymphoedema*

*Exclusion: haematological system functions (b430)*

- b 4350 Immune response**  
Functions of the body's response of sensitization to foreign substances, including infections.
  - b 43500 Specific immune response**  
Functions of the body's response of sensitization to a specific foreign substance.
  - b 43501 Non-specific immune response**  
Functions of the body's general response of sensitization to foreign substances, including infections.
  - b 43508 Immune response, other specified**
  - b 43509 Immune response, unspecified**

**b 4351 Hypersensitivity reactions**

Functions of the body's response of increased sensitization to foreign substances, such as in sensitivities to different antigens.

*Inclusions: impairments such as hypersensitivities or allergies*

*Exclusion: tolerance to food (b5153)*

**b 4352 Functions of lymphatic vessels**

Functions related to vascular channels that transport lymph.

**b 4353 Functions of lymph nodes**

Functions related to glands along the course of lymphatic vessels.

**b 4358 Immunological system functions, other specified****b 4359 Immunological system functions, unspecified****b 439 Functions of the haematological and immunological systems, other specified and unspecified**

## *Functions of the respiratory system (b440-b449)*

**b 440 Respiration functions**

Functions of inhaling air into the lungs, the exchange of gases between air and blood, and exhaling air.

*Inclusions: functions of respiration rate, rhythm and depth; impairments such as apnoea, hyperventilation, irregular respiration, paradoxical respiration, and bronchial spasm, and as in pulmonary emphysema*

*Exclusions: respiratory muscle functions (b445); additional respiratory functions (b450); exercise tolerance functions (b455)*

**b 4400 Respiration rate**

Functions related to the number of breaths taken per minute.

*Inclusions: impairments such as rates that are too fast (tachypnoea) or too slow (bradypnoea)*

**b 4401 Respiratory rhythm**

Functions related to the periodicity and regularity of breathing.

*Inclusions: impairments such as irregular breathing*



**b 4402 Depth of respiration**

Functions related to the volume of expansion of the lungs during breathing.

*Inclusions: impairments such as superficial or shallow respiration*

**b 4408 Respiration functions, other specified****b 4409 Respiration functions, unspecified****b 445 Respiratory muscle functions**

Functions of the muscles involved in breathing.

*Inclusions: functions of thoracic respiratory muscles; functions of the diaphragm; functions of accessory respiratory muscles*

*Exclusions: respiration functions (b440); additional respiratory functions (b450); exercise tolerance functions (b455)*

**b 4450 Functions of the thoracic respiratory muscles**

Functions of the thoracic muscles involved in breathing.

**b 4451 Functions of the diaphragm**

Functions of the diaphragm as involved in breathing.

**b 4452 Functions of accessory respiratory muscles**

Functions of the additional muscles involved in breathing.

**b 4458 Respiratory muscle functions, other specified****b 4459 Respiratory muscle functions, unspecified****b 449 Functions of the respiratory system, other specified and unspecified**

## *Additional functions and sensations of the cardiovascular and respiratory systems (b450-b469)*

**b 450 Additional respiratory functions**

Additional functions related to breathing, such as coughing, sneezing and yawning.

*Inclusions: functions of blowing, whistling and mouth breathing*

**b 455**    **Exercise tolerance functions**

Functions related to respiratory and cardiovascular capacity as required for enduring physical exertion.

*Inclusions: functions of physical endurance, aerobic capacity, stamina and fatiguability*

*Exclusions: functions of the cardiovascular system (b410-b429); haematological system functions (b430); respiration functions (b440); respiratory muscle functions (b445); additional respiratory functions (b450)*

**b 4550**    **General physical endurance**

Functions related to the general level of tolerance of physical exercise or stamina.

**b 4551**    **Aerobic capacity**

Functions related to the extent to which a person can exercise without getting out of breath.

**b 4552**    **Fatiguability**

Functions related to susceptibility to fatigue, at any level of exertion.

**b 4558**    **Exercise tolerance functions, other specified****b 4559**    **Exercise tolerance functions, unspecified****b 460**    **Sensations associated with cardiovascular and respiratory functions**

Sensations such as missing a heart beat, palpitation and shortness of breath.

*Inclusions: sensations of tightness of chest, feelings of irregular beat, dyspnoea, air hunger, choking, gagging and wheezing*

*Exclusion: sensation of pain (b280)*

**b 469**    **Additional functions and sensations of the cardiovascular and respiratory systems, other specified and unspecified****b 498**    **Functions of the cardiovascular, haematological, immunological and respiratory systems, other specified****b 499**    **Functions of the cardiovascular, haematological, immunological and respiratory systems, unspecified**

## Chapter 5

# Functions of the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems

This chapter is about the functions of ingestion, digestion and elimination, as well as functions involved in metabolism and the endocrine glands.

### *Functions related to the digestive system (b510-b539)*

#### **b510** Ingestion functions

Functions related to taking in and manipulating solids or liquids through the mouth into the body.

*Inclusions: functions of sucking, chewing and biting, manipulating food in the mouth, salivation, swallowing, burping, regurgitation, spitting and vomiting; impairments such as dysphagia, aspiration of food, aerophagia, excessive salivation, drooling and insufficient salivation*

*Exclusion: sensations associated with digestive system (b535)*

#### **b 5100** Sucking

Functions of drawing into the mouth by a suction force produced by movements of the cheeks, lips and tongue.

#### **b 5101** Biting

Functions of cutting into, piercing or tearing off food with the front teeth.

#### **b 5102** Chewing

Functions of crushing, grinding and masticating food with the back teeth (e.g. molars).

#### **b 5103** Manipulation of food in the mouth

Functions of moving food around the mouth with the teeth and tongue.

#### **b 5104** Salivation

Function of the production of saliva within the mouth.

**b 5105 Swallowing**

Functions of clearing the food and drink through the oral cavity, pharynx and oesophagus into the stomach at an appropriate rate and speed.

*Inclusions: oral, pharyngeal or oesophageal dysphagia; impairments in oesophageal passage of food*

**b 51050 Oral swallowing**

Function of clearing the food and drink through the oral cavity at an appropriate rate and speed.

**b 51051 Pharyngeal swallowing**

Function of clearing the food and drink through the pharynx at an appropriate rate and speed.

**b 51052 Oesophageal swallowing**

Function of clearing the food and drink through the oesophagus at an appropriate rate and speed.

**b 51058 Swallowing, other specified****b 51059 Swallowing, unspecified****b 5106 Regurgitation and vomiting**

Functions of moving food or liquid in the reverse direction to ingestion, from stomach to oesophagus to mouth and out.

**b 5108 Ingestion functions, other specified****b 5109 Ingestion functions, unspecified****b 515 Digestive functions**

Functions of transporting food through the gastrointestinal tract, breakdown of food and absorption of nutrients.

*Inclusions: functions of transport of food through the stomach, peristalsis; breakdown of food, enzyme production and action in stomach and intestines; absorption of nutrients and tolerance to food; impairments such as in hyperacidity of stomach, malabsorption, intolerance to food, hypermotility of intestines, intestinal paralysis, intestinal obstruction and decreased bile production*

*Exclusions: ingestion functions (b510); assimilation functions (b520); defecation functions (b525); sensations associated with the digestive system (b535)*



- b 5150 Transport of food through stomach and intestines**  
Peristalsis and related functions that mechanically move food through stomach and intestines.
- b 5151 Breakdown of food**  
Functions of mechanically reducing food to smaller particles in the gastrointestinal tract.
- b 5152 Absorption of nutrients**  
Functions of passing food and drink nutrients into the blood stream from along the intestines.
- b 5153 Tolerance to food**  
Functions of accepting suitable food and drink for digestion and rejecting what is unsuitable.  
*Inclusion: impairments such as hypersensitivities, gluten intolerance*
- b 5158 Digestive functions, other specified**
- b 5159 Digestive functions, unspecified**
- b 520 Assimilation functions**  
Functions by which nutrients are converted into components of the living body.  
*Inclusion: functions of storage of nutrients in the body*  
*Exclusions: digestive functions (b515); defecation functions (b525); weight maintenance functions (b530); general metabolic functions (b540)*
- b 525 Defecation functions**  
Functions of elimination of wastes and undigested food as faeces and related functions.  
*Inclusions: functions of elimination, faecal consistency, frequency of defecation; faecal continence, flatulence; impairments such as constipation, diarrhoea, watery stool and anal sphincter incompetence or incontinence*  
*Exclusions: digestive functions (b515); assimilation functions (b520); sensations associated with the digestive system (b535)*
- b 5250 Elimination of faeces**  
Functions of the elimination of waste from the rectum, including the functions of contraction of the abdominal muscles in doing so.

- b 5251 Faecal consistency**  
Consistency of faeces such as hard, firm, soft or watery.
- b 5252 Frequency of defecation**  
Functions involved in the frequency of defecation.
- b 5253 Faecal continence**  
Functions involved in voluntary control over the elimination function.
- b 5254 Flatulence**  
Functions involved in the expulsion of excessive amounts of air or gases from the intestines.
- b 5258 Defecation functions, other specified**
- b 5259 Defecation functions, unspecified**

- b 530 Weight maintenance functions**  
Functions of maintaining appropriate body weight, including weight gain during the developmental period.

*Inclusions: functions of maintenance of acceptable Body Mass Index (BMI); and impairments such as underweight, cachexia, wasting, overweight, emaciation and such as in primary and secondary obesity*

*Exclusions: assimilation functions (b520); general metabolic functions (b540); endocrine gland functions (b555)*

- b 535 Sensations associated with the digestive system**  
Sensations arising from eating, drinking and related digestive functions.

*Inclusions: sensations of nausea, feeling bloated, and the feeling of abdominal cramps; fullness of stomach, globus feeling, spasm of stomach, gas in stomach and heartburn*

*Exclusions: sensation of pain (b280); ingestion functions (b510); digestive functions (b515); defecation functions (b525)*

- b 5350 Sensation of nausea**  
Sensation of needing to vomit.
- b 5351 Feeling bloated**  
Sensation of distension of the stomach or abdomen.

- b 5352 Sensation of abdominal cramp**  
Sensation of spasmodic or painful muscular contractions of the smooth muscles of the gastrointestinal tract.
- b 5358 Sensations associated with the digestive system, other specified**
- b 5359 Sensations associated with the digestive system, unspecified**
- b 539 Functions related to the digestive system, other specified and unspecified**

## *Functions related to metabolism and the endocrine system (b540-b559)*

- b 540 General metabolic functions**  
Functions of regulation of essential components of the body such as carbohydrates, proteins and fats, the conversion of one to another, and their breakdown into energy.  
*Inclusions: functions of metabolism, basal metabolic rate, metabolism of carbohydrate, protein and fat, catabolism, anabolism, energy production in the body; increase or decrease in metabolic rate*  
*Exclusions: assimilation functions (b520); weight maintenance functions (b530); water, mineral and electrolyte balance functions (b545); thermoregulatory functions (b550); endocrine glands functions (b555)*
- b 5400 Basal metabolic rate**  
Functions involved in oxygen consumption of the body at specified conditions of rest and temperature.  
*Inclusions: increase or decrease in basic metabolic rate; impairments such as in hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism*
- b 5401 Carbohydrate metabolism**  
Functions involved in the process by which carbohydrates in the diet are stored and broken down into glucose and subsequently into carbon dioxide and water.
- b 5402 Protein metabolism**  
Functions involved in the process by which proteins in the diet are converted to amino acids and broken down further in the body.

**b 5403 Fat metabolism**

Functions involved in the process by which fat in the diet is stored and broken down in the body.

**b 5408 General metabolic functions, other specified****b 5409 General metabolic functions, unspecified****b 545 Water, mineral and electrolyte balance functions**

Functions of the regulation of water, mineral and electrolytes in the body.

*Inclusions: functions of water balance, balance of minerals such as calcium, zinc and iron, and balance of electrolytes such as sodium and potassium; impairments such as in water retention, dehydration, hypercalcaemia, hypocalcaemia, iron deficiency, hypernatraemia, hyponatraemia, hyperkalaemia and hypokalaemia*

*Exclusions: haematological system functions (b430); general metabolic functions (b540); endocrine gland functions (b555)*

**b 5450 Water balance**

Functions involved in maintaining the level or amount of water in the body.

*Inclusions: impairments such as in dehydration and rehydration*

**b 54500 Water retention**

Functions involved in keeping water in the body.

**b 54501 Maintenance of water balance**

Functions involved in maintaining the optimal amount of water in the body.

**b 54508 Water balance functions, other specified****b 54509 Water balance functions, unspecified****b 5451 Mineral balance**

Functions involved in maintaining an equilibrium between intake, storage, utilization and excretion of minerals in the body.

**b 5452 Electrolyte balance**

Functions involved in maintaining an equilibrium between intake, storage, utilization and excretion of electrolytes in the body.



**b 5458** Water, mineral and electrolyte balance functions, other specified

**b 5459** Water, mineral and electrolyte balance functions, unspecified

**b 550** Thermoregulatory functions

Functions of the regulation of body temperature.

*Inclusions: functions of maintenance of body temperature; impairments such as hypothermia, hyperthermia*

*Exclusions: general metabolic functions (b540); endocrine gland functions (b555)*

**b 5500** Body temperature

Functions involved in regulating the core temperature of the body.

*Inclusions: impairments such as hyperthermia or hypothermia*

**b 5501** Maintenance of body temperature

Functions involved in maintaining optimal body temperature as environmental temperature changes.

*Inclusion: tolerance to heat or cold*

**b 5508** Thermoregulatory functions, other specified

**b 5509** Thermoregulatory functions, unspecified

**b 555** Endocrine gland functions

Functions of production and regulation of hormonal levels in the body, including cyclical changes.

*Inclusions: functions of hormonal balance; hyperpituitarism, hypopituitarism, hyperthyroidism, hypothyroidism, hyperadrenalism, hypoadrenalism, hyperparathyroidism, hypoparathyroidism, hypergonadism, hypogonadism*

*Exclusions: general metabolic functions (b540); water, mineral and electrolyte balance functions (b545); thermoregulatory functions (b550); sexual functions (b640); menstruation functions (b650)*

**b 559** Functions related to metabolism and the endocrine system, other specified and unspecified

**b 598** Functions of the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems, other specified

**b599** Functions of the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems, unspecified

## Chapter 6

# Genitourinary and reproductive functions

This chapter is about the functions of urination and the reproductive functions, including sexual and procreative functions.

### Urinary functions (b610-b639)

#### **b610** Urinary excretory functions

Functions of filtration and collection of the urine.

*Inclusions:* functions of urinary filtration, collection of urine; impairments such as in renal insufficiency, anuria, oliguria, hydronephrosis, hypotonic urinary bladder and ureteric obstruction

*Exclusion:* urination functions (b620)

##### **b6100** Filtration of urine

Functions of filtration of urine by the kidneys.

##### **b6101** Collection of urine

Functions of collection and storage of urine by the ureters and bladder.

##### **b6108** Urinary excretory functions, other specified

##### **b6109** Urinary excretory functions, unspecified

#### **b620** Urination functions

Functions of discharge of urine from the urinary bladder.

*Inclusions:* functions of urination, frequency of urination, urinary continence; impairments such as in stress, urge, reflex, overflow, continuous incontinence, dribbling, automatic bladder, polyuria, urinary retention and urinary urgency

*Exclusions:* urinary excretory functions (b610); sensations associated with urinary functions (b630)

##### **b6200** Urination

Functions of voiding the urinary bladder.

*Inclusions:* impairments such as in urine retention

##### **b6201** Frequency of urination

Functions involved in the number of times urination occurs.

**b 6202 Urinary continence**

Functions of control over urination.

*Inclusions: impairments such as in stress, urge, reflex, continuous and mixed incontinence*

**b 6208 Urination functions, other specified****b 6209 Urination functions, unspecified****b 630 Sensations associated with urinary functions**

Sensations arising from voiding and related urinary functions

*Inclusions: sensations of incomplete voiding of urine, feeling of fullness of bladder*

*Exclusions: sensations of pain (b280); urination functions (b620)*

**b 639 Urinary functions, other specified and unspecified**

## ***Genital and reproductive functions (b640-b679)***

**b 640 Sexual functions**

Mental and physical functions related to the sexual act, including the arousal, preparatory, orgasmic and resolution stages.

*Inclusions: functions of the sexual arousal, preparatory, orgasmic and resolution phase: functions related to sexual interest, performance, penile erection, clitoral erection, vaginal lubrication, ejaculation, orgasm; impairments such as impotence, frigidity, vaginismus, premature ejaculation, priapism and delayed ejaculation*

*Exclusions: procreation functions (b660); sensations associated with genital and reproductive functions (b670)*

**b 6400 Functions of sexual arousal phase**

Functions of sexual interest and excitement.

**b 6401 Functions of sexual preparatory phase**

Functions of engaging in sexual intercourse.

**b 6402 Functions of orgasmic phase**

Functions of reaching orgasm.



**b 6403 Functions of sexual resolution phase**

Functions of satisfaction after orgasm and accompanying relaxation.

*Inclusions: impairments such as dissatisfaction with orgasm*

**b 6408 Sexual functions, other specified****b 6409 Sexual functions, unspecified****b 650 Menstruation functions**

Functions associated with the menstrual cycle, including regularity of menstruation and discharge of menstrual fluids.

*Inclusions: functions of regularity and interval of menstruation, extent of menstrual bleeding, menarche, menopause; impairments such as primary and secondary amenorrhoea, menorrhagia, polymenorrhoea and retrograde menstruation premenstrual tension*

*Exclusions: sexual functions (b640); procreation functions (b660); sensations associated with genital and reproductive functions (b670); sensation of pain (b280)*

**b 6500 Regularity of menstrual cycle**

Functions involved in the regularity of the menstrual cycle.

*Inclusions: too frequent or too few occurrences of menstruation*

**b 6501 Interval between menstruation**

Functions relating to the length of time between two menstrual cycles.

**b 6502 Extent of menstrual bleeding**

Functions involved in the quantity of menstrual flow.

*Inclusions: too little menstrual flow (hypomenorrhoea); too much menstrual flow (menorrhagia, hypermenorrhoea)*

**b 6508 Menstruation functions, other specified****b 6509 Menstruation functions, unspecified**

**b 660 Procreation functions**

Functions associated with fertility, pregnancy, childbirth and lactation.

*Inclusions: functions of male fertility and female fertility, pregnancy and childbirth, and lactation; impairments such as azoospermia, oligozoospermia, agalactorrhoea, galactorrhoea, alactation and such as in subfertility, sterility, , spontaneous abortions, ectopic pregnancy, miscarriage, small fetus, hydramnios and premature childbirth, and delayed childbirth*

*Exclusions: sexual functions (b640); menstruation functions (b650)*

**b 6600 Functions related to fertility**

Functions related to the ability to produce gametes for procreation.

*Inclusion: impairments such as in subfertility and sterility*

*Exclusion: sexual functions (b640)*

**b 6601 Functions related to pregnancy**

Functions involved in becoming pregnant and being pregnant.

**b 6602 Functions related to childbirth**

Functions involved during childbirth.

**b 6603 Lactation**

Functions involved in producing milk and making it available to the child.

**b 6608 Procreation functions, other specified****b 6609 Procreation functions, unspecified****b 670 Sensations associated with genital and reproductive functions**

Sensations arising from sexual arousal, intercourse, menstruation, and related genital or reproductive functions.

*Inclusions: sensations of dyspareunia, dysmenorrhoea, hot flushes during menopause and night sweats during menopause*

*Exclusions: sensation of pain (b280); sensations associated with urinary functions (b630); sexual functions (b640); menstruation functions (b650); procreation functions (b660)*

**b 6700 Discomfort associated with sexual intercourse**

Sensations associated with sexual arousal, preparation, intercourse, orgasm and resolution.

**b 6701**    **Discomfort associated with the menstrual cycle**  
Sensations involved with menstruation, including pre- and post-menstrual phases.

**b 6702**    **Discomfort associated with menopause**  
Sensations associated with cessation of the menstrual cycle.  
*Inclusions: hot flushes and night sweats during menopause*

**b 6708**    **Sensations associated with genital and reproductive functions, other specified**

**b 6709**    **Sensations associated with genital and reproductive functions, unspecified**

**b 679**    **Genital and reproductive functions, other specified and unspecified**

**b 698**    **Genitourinary and reproductive functions, other specified**

**b 699**    **Genitourinary and reproductive functions, unspecified**

## Chapter 7

# Neuromusculoskeletal and movement-related functions

This chapter is about the functions of movement and mobility, including functions of joints, bones, reflexes and muscles.

### *Functions of the joints and bones (b710-b729)*

#### **b710** Mobility of joint functions

Functions of the range and ease of movement of a joint.

*Inclusions: functions of mobility of single or several joints, vertebral, shoulder, elbow, wrist, hip, knee, ankle, small joints of hands and feet; mobility of joints generalized; impairments such as in hypermobility of joints, frozen joints, frozen shoulder, arthritis*

*Exclusions: stability of joint functions (b715); control of voluntary movement functions (b760)*

##### **b 7100** Mobility of a single joint

Functions of the range and ease of movement of one joint.

##### **b 7101** Mobility of several joints

Functions of the range and ease of movement of more than one joint.

##### **b 7102** Mobility of joints generalized

Functions of the range and ease of movement of joints throughout the body.

##### **b 7108** Mobility of joint functions, other specified

##### **b 7109** Mobility of joint functions, unspecified

#### **b715** Stability of joint functions

Functions of the maintenance of structural integrity of the joints.

*Inclusions: functions of the stability of a single joint, several joints, and joints generalized; impairments such as in unstable shoulder joint, dislocation of a joint, dislocation of shoulder and hip*

*Exclusion: mobility of joint functions (b710)*



- b 7150 Stability of a single joint**  
Functions of the maintenance of structural integrity of one joint.
- b 7151 Stability of several joints**  
Functions of the maintenance of structural integrity of more than one joint.
- b 7152 Stability of joints generalized**  
Functions of the maintenance of structural integrity of joints throughout the body.
- b 7158 Stability of joint functions, other specified**
- b 7159 Stability of joint functions, unspecified**

**b 720****Mobility of bone functions**

Functions of the range and ease of movement of the scapula, pelvis, carpal and tarsal bones.

*Inclusions: impairments such as frozen scapula and frozen pelvis*

*Exclusion: mobility of joints functions (b710)*

**b 7200 Mobility of scapula**

Functions of the range and ease of movement of the scapula.

*Inclusions: impairments such as protraction, retraction, laterorotation and medial rotation of the scapula*

**b 7201 Mobility of pelvis**

Functions of the range and ease of movement of the pelvis.

*Inclusion: rotation of the pelvis*

**b 7202 Mobility of carpal bones**

Functions of the range and ease of movement of the carpal bones.

**b 7203 Mobility of tarsal bones**

Functions of the range and ease of movement of the tarsal bones.

**b 7208 Mobility of bone functions, other specified****b 7209 Mobility of bone functions, specified****b 729**

**Functions of the joints and bones, other specified and unspecified**

## Muscle functions (b730-b749)

### **b 730** Muscle power functions

Functions related to the force generated by the contraction of a muscle or muscle groups.

*Inclusions: functions associated with the power of specific muscles and muscle groups, muscles of one limb, one side of the body, the lower half of the body, all limbs, the trunk and the body as a whole; impairments such as weakness of small muscles in feet and hands, muscle paresis, muscle paralysis, monoplegia, hemiplegia, paraplegia, quadriplegia and akinetic mutism*

*Exclusions: functions of structures adjoining the eye (b215); muscle tone functions (b735); muscle endurance functions (b740)*

#### **b 7300** Power of isolated muscles and muscle groups

Functions related to the force generated by the contraction of specific and isolated muscles and muscle groups.

*Inclusions: impairments such as weakness of small muscles of feet or hands*

#### **b 7301** Power of muscles of one limb

Functions related to the force generated by the contraction of the muscles and muscle groups of one arm or leg.

*Inclusions: impairments such as monoparesis and monoplegia*

#### **b 7302** Power of muscles of one side of the body

Functions related to the force generated by the contraction of the muscles and muscle groups found on the left or right side of the body.

*Inclusions: impairments such as hemiparesis and hemiplegia*

#### **b 7303** Power of muscles in lower half of the body

Functions related to the force generated by the contraction of the muscles and muscle groups found in the lower half of the body.

*Inclusions: impairments such as paraparesis and paraplegia*

#### **b 7304** Power of muscles of all limbs

Functions related to the force generated by the contraction of muscles and muscle groups of all four limbs.

*Inclusions: impairments such as tetraparesis and tetraplegia*

**b 7305 Power of muscles of the trunk**

Functions related to the force generated by the contraction of muscles and muscle groups in the trunk.

**b 7306 Power of all muscles of the body**

Functions related to the force generated by the contraction of all muscles and muscle groups of the body.

*Inclusions: impairments such as akinetic mutism*

**b 7308 Muscle power functions, other specified****b 7309 Muscle power functions, unspecified****b 735 Muscle tone functions**

Functions related to the tension present in the resting muscles and the resistance offered when trying to move the muscles passively.

*Inclusions: functions associated with the tension of isolated muscles and muscle groups, muscles of one limb, one side of the body and the lower half of the body, muscles of all limbs, muscles of the trunk, and all muscles of the body; impairments such as hypotonia, hypertonia and muscle spasticity*

*Exclusions: muscle power functions (b730); muscle endurance functions (b740)*

**b 7350 Tone of isolated muscles and muscle groups**

Functions related to the tension present in the resting isolated muscles and muscle groups and the resistance offered when trying to move those muscles passively.

*Inclusions: impairments such as in focal dystonias, e.g. torticollis*

**b 7351 Tone of muscles of one limb**

Functions related to the tension present in the resting muscles and muscle groups in one arm or leg and the resistance offered when trying to move those muscles passively.

*Inclusions: impairments associated with monoparesis and monoplegia*

**b 7352 Tone of muscles of one side of body**

Functions related to the tension present in the resting muscles and muscle groups of the right or left side of the body and the resistance offered when trying to move those muscles passively.

*Inclusions: impairments associated with hemiparesis and hemiplegia*



**b 7353 Tone of muscles of lower half of body**

Functions related to the tension present in the resting muscles and muscle groups in the lower half of the body and the resistance offered when trying to move those muscles passively.

*Inclusions: impairments associated with paraparesis and paraplegia*

**b 7354 Tone of muscles of all limbs**

Functions related to the tension present in the resting muscles and muscle groups in all four limbs and the resistance offered when trying to move those muscles passively.

*Inclusions: impairments associated with tetraparesis and tetraplegia*

**b 7355 Tone of muscles of trunk**

Functions related to the tension present in the resting muscles and muscle groups of the trunk and the resistance offered when trying to move those muscles passively.

**b 7356 Tone of all muscles of the body**

Functions related to the tension present in the resting muscles and muscle groups of the whole body and the resistance offered when trying to move those muscles passively.

*Inclusions: impairments such as in generalized dystonias and Parkinson's disease, or general paresis and paralysis*

**b 7358 Muscle tone functions, other specified****b 7359 Muscle tone functions, unspecified****b 740 Muscle endurance functions**

Functions related to sustaining muscle contraction for the required period of time.

*Inclusions: functions associated with sustaining muscle contraction for isolated muscles and muscle groups, and all muscles of the body; impairments such as in myasthenia gravis*

*Exclusions: exercise tolerance functions (b455); muscle power functions (b730); muscle tone functions (b735)*

**b 7400 Endurance of isolated muscles**

Functions related to sustaining muscle contraction of isolated muscles for the required period of time.



- b 7401 Endurance of muscle groups**  
Functions related to sustaining muscle contraction of isolated muscle groups for the required period of time.

*Inclusions: impairments associated with monoparesis, monoplegia, hemiparesis and hemiplegia, paraparesis and paraplegia*

- b 7402 Endurance of all muscles of the body**  
Functions related to sustaining muscle contraction of all muscles of the body for the required period of time.

*Inclusions: impairments associated with tetraparesis, tetraplegia, general paresis and paralysis*

- b 7408 Muscle endurance functions, other specified**

- b 7409 Muscle endurance functions, unspecified**

- b 749 Muscle functions, other specified and unspecified**

## *Movement functions (b750-b789)*

- b 750 Motor reflex functions**  
Functions of involuntary contraction of muscles automatically induced by specific stimuli.

*Inclusions: functions of stretch motor reflex, automatic local joint reflex, reflexes generated by noxious stimuli and other exteroceptive stimuli; withdrawal reflex, biceps reflex, radius reflex, quadriceps reflex, patellar reflex, ankle reflex*

- b 7500 Stretch motor reflex**  
Functions of involuntary contractions of muscles automatically induced by stretching.

- b 7501 Reflexes generated by noxious stimuli**  
Functions of involuntary contractions of muscles automatically induced by painful or other noxious stimuli.

*Inclusion: withdrawal reflex*

- b 7502 Reflexes generated by other exteroceptive stimuli**  
Functions of involuntary contractions of muscles automatically induced by external stimuli other than noxious stimuli.

- b 7508 Motor reflex functions, other specified**

**b 7509 Motor reflex functions, unspecified****b 755 Involuntary movement reaction functions**

Functions of involuntary contractions of large muscles or the whole body induced by body position, balance and threatening stimuli.

*Inclusions: functions of postural reactions, righting reactions, body adjustment reactions, balance reactions, supporting reactions, defensive reactions*

*Exclusion: motor reflex functions (b750)*

**b 760 Control of voluntary movement functions**

Functions associated with control over and coordination of voluntary movements.

*Inclusions: functions of control of simple voluntary movements and of complex voluntary movements, coordination of voluntary movements, supportive functions of arm or leg, right left motor coordination, eye hand coordination, eye foot coordination; impairments such as control and coordination problems, e.g. dysdiadochokinesia*

*Exclusions: muscle power functions (b730); involuntary movement functions (b765); gait pattern functions (b770)*

**b 7600 Control of simple voluntary movements**

Functions associated with control over and coordination of simple or isolated voluntary movements.

**b 7601 Control of complex voluntary movements**

Functions associated with control over and coordination of complex voluntary movements.

**b 7602 Coordination of voluntary movements**

Functions associated with coordination of simple and complex voluntary movements, performing movements in an orderly combination.

*Inclusions: right left coordination, coordination of visually directed movements, such as eye hand coordination and eye foot coordination; impairments such as dysdiadochokinesia*

**b 7603 Supportive functions of arm or leg**

Functions associated with control over and coordination of voluntary movements by placing weight either on the arms (elbows or hands) or on the legs (knees or feet).

**b 7608 Control of voluntary movement functions, other specified**

**b 7609 Control of voluntary movement functions, unspecified****b 765 Involuntary movement functions**

Functions of unintentional, non- or semi-purposive involuntary contractions of a muscle or group of muscles.

*Inclusions: involuntary contractions of muscles; impairments such as tremors, tics, mannerisms, stereotypies, motor perseveration, chorea, athetosis, vocal tics, dystonic movements and dyskinesia*

*Exclusions: control of voluntary movement functions (b760); gait pattern functions (b770)*

**b 7650 Involuntary contractions of muscles**

Functions of unintentional, non- or semi-purposive involuntary contractions of a muscle or group of muscles, such as those involved as part of a psychological dysfunction.

*Inclusions: impairments such as choreatic and athetotic movements; sleep-related movement disorders*

**b 7651 Tremor**

Functions of alternating contraction and relaxation of a group of muscles around a joint, resulting in shakiness.

**b 7652 Tics and mannerisms**

Functions of repetitive, quasi-purposive, involuntary contractions of a group of muscles.

*Inclusion: impairments such as vocal tics, coprolalia and bruxism*

**b 7653 Stereotypies and motor perseveration**

Functions of spontaneous, non-purposive movements such as repetitively rocking back and forth and nodding the head or wiggling.

**b 7658 Involuntary movement functions, other specified****b 7659 Involuntary movement functions, unspecified**

**b 770**    **Gait pattern functions**

Functions of movement patterns associated with walking, running or other whole body movements.

*Inclusions: walking patterns and running patterns; impairments such as spastic gait, hemiplegic gait, paraplegic gait, asymmetric gait, limping and stiff gait pattern*

*Exclusions: muscle power functions (b730); muscle tone functions (b735); control of voluntary movement functions (b760); involuntary movement functions (b765)*

**b 780**    **Sensations related to muscles and movement functions**

Sensations associated with the muscles or muscle groups of the body and their movement.

*Inclusions: sensations of muscle stiffness and tightness of muscles, muscle spasm or constriction, and heaviness of muscles*

*Exclusion: sensation of pain (b280)*

**b 7800**    **Sensation of muscle stiffness**

Sensation of tightness or stiffness of muscles.

**b 7801**    **Sensation of muscle spasm**

Sensation of involuntary contraction of a muscle or a group of muscles.

**b 7808**    **Sensations related to muscles and movement functions, other specified****b 7809**    **Sensations related to muscles and movement functions, unspecified****b 789**    **Movement functions, other specified and unspecified****b 798**    **Neuromusculoskeletal and movement-related functions, other specified****b 799**    **Neuromusculoskeletal and movement-related functions, unspecified**



## Chapter 8

# Functions of the skin and related structures

This chapter is about the functions of skin, nails and hair.

### *Functions of the skin (b810-b849)*

#### **b810** Protective functions of the skin

Functions of the skin for protecting the body from physical, chemical and biological threats.

*Inclusions: functions of protecting against the sun and other radiation, photosensitivity, pigmentation, quality of skin; insulating function of skin, callus formation, hardening; impairments such as broken skin, ulcers, bedsores and thinning of skin*

*Exclusions: repair functions of the skin (b820); other functions of the skin (b830)*

#### **b820** Repair functions of the skin

Functions of the skin for repairing breaks and other damage to the skin.

*Inclusions: functions of scab formation, healing, scarring; bruising and keloid formation*

*Exclusions: protective functions of the skin (b810); other functions of the skin (b830)*

#### **b830** Other functions of the skin

Functions of the skin other than protection and repair, such as cooling and sweat secretion.

*Inclusions: functions of sweating, glandular functions of the skin and resulting body odour*

*Exclusions: protective functions of the skin (b810); repair functions of the skin (b820)*

#### **b840** Sensation related to the skin

Sensations related to the skin such as itching, burning sensation and tingling.

*Inclusions: impairments such as pins and needles sensation and crawling sensation*

*Exclusion: sensation of pain (b280)*

**b 849** Functions of the skin, other specified and unspecified

### *Functions of the hair and nails (b850-b869)*

**b 850** Functions of hair

Functions of the hair, such as protection, coloration and appearance.

*Inclusions: functions of growth of hair, pigmentation of hair, location of hair; impairments such as loss of hair or alopecia*

**b 860** Functions of nails

Functions of the nails, such as protection, scratching and appearance.

*Inclusions: growth and pigmentation of nails, quality of nails*

**b 869** Functions of the hair and nails, other specified and unspecified

**b 898** Functions of the skin and related structures, other specified

**b 899** Functions of the skin and related structures, unspecified

# BODY STRUCTURES

*Definitions:*        *Body structures are anatomical parts of the body such as organs, limbs and their components.*

*Impairments are problems in body function or structure as a significant deviation or loss.*

*First qualifier*

Generic qualifier with the negative scale used to indicate the extent or magnitude of an impairment:

xxx.0	NO impairment	(none, absent, negligible,... )	0-4 %
xxx.1	MILD impairment	(slight, low,...)	5-24 %
xxx.2	MODERATE impairment	(medium, fair,...)	25-49 %
xxx.3	SEVERE impairment	(high, extreme, ...)	50-95 %
xxx.4	COMPLETE impairment	(total,...)	96-100 %
xxx.8	not specified		
xxx.9	not applicable		

Broad ranges of percentages are provided for those cases in which calibrated assessment instruments or other standards are available to quantify the impairment in body structure. For example, when “no impairment” or “complete impairment” in body structure is coded, this scaling may have margin of error of up to 5%. “Moderate impairment” is generally up to half of the scale of total impairment. The percentages are to be calibrated in different domains with reference to population standards as percentiles. For this quantification to be used in a uniform manner, assessment procedures need to be developed through research.

*Second qualifier*

Used to indicate the nature of the change in the respective body structure:

- 0    no change in structure
- 1    total absence
- 2    partial absence
- 3    additional part
- 4    aberrant dimensions
- 5    discontinuity
- 6    deviating position
- 7    qualitative changes in structure, including accumulation of fluid
- 8    not specified
- 9    not applicable

*Third qualifier (suggested)*

To be developed to indicate localization

- 0 more than one region
- 1 right
- 2 left
- 3 both sides
- 4 front
- 5 back
- 6 proximal
- 7 distal
- 8 not specified
- 9 not applicable

For a further explanation of coding conventions in ICF, refer to Annex 2.



# Chapter 1

## Structures of the nervous system

### **s 110** Structure of brain

- s 1100 Structure of cortical lobes
  - s 11000 Frontal lobe
  - s 11001 Temporal lobe
  - s 11002 Parietal lobe
  - s 11003 Occipital lobe
  - s 11008 Structure of cortical lobes, other specified
  - s 11009 Structure of cortical lobes, unspecified
- s 1101 Structure of midbrain
- s 1102 Structure of diencephalon
- s 1103 Basal ganglia and related structures
- s 1104 Structure of cerebellum
- s 1105 Structure of brain stem
  - s 11050 Medulla oblongata
  - s 11051 Pons
  - s 11058 Structure of brain stem, other specified
  - s 11059 Structure of brain stem, unspecified
- s 1106 Structure of cranial nerves
- s 1108 Structure of brain, other specified
- s 1109 Structure of brain, unspecified

### **s 120** Spinal cord and related structures

- s 1200 Structure of spinal cord
  - s 12000 Cervical spinal cord
  - s 12001 Thoracic spinal cord

- s 12002 Lumbosacral spinal cord
- s 12003 Cauda equina
- s 12008 Structure of spinal cord, other specified
- s 12009 Structure of spinal cord, unspecified
- s 1201 Spinal nerves
- s 1208 Spinal cord and related structures, other specified
- s 1209 Spinal cord and related structures, unspecified
- s 130** Structure of meninges
- s 140** Structure of sympathetic nervous system
- s 150** Structure of parasympathetic nervous system
- s 198** Structure of the nervous system, other specified
- s 199** Structure of the nervous system, unspecified

## Chapter 2

# The eye, ear and related structures

### **s 210**    Structure of eye socket

### **s 220**    Structure of eyeball

s 2200    Conjunctiva, sclera, choroid

s 2201    Cornea

s 2202    Iris

s 2203    Retina

s 2204    Lens of eyeball

s 2205    Vitreous body

s 2208    Structure of eyeball, other specified

s 2209    Structure of eyeball, unspecified

### **s 230**    Structures around eye

s 2300    Lachrymal gland and related structures

s 2301    Eyelid

s 2302    Eyebrow

s 2303    External ocular muscles

s 2308    Structures around eye, other specified

s 2309    Structures around eye, unspecified

### **s 240**    Structure of external ear

### **s 250**    Structure of middle ear

s 2500    Tympanic membrane

s 2501    Eustachian canal

s 2502    Ossicles

s 2508    Structure of middle ear, other specified

s 2509 Structure of middle ear, unspecified

**s 260** Structure of inner ear

s 2600 Cochlea

s 2601 Vestibular labyrinth

s 2602 Semicircular canals

s 2603 Internal auditory meatus

s 2608 Structure of inner ear, other specified

s 2609 Structure of inner ear, unspecified

**s 298** Eye, ear and related structures, other specified

**s 299** Eye, ear and related structures, unspecified



## Chapter 3

# Structures involved in voice and speech

### **s 310**    Structure of nose

- s 3100    External nose
- s 3101    Nasal septum
- s 3102    Nasal fossae
- s 3108    Structure of nose, other specified
- s 3109    Structure of nose, unspecified

### **s 320**    Structure of mouth

- s 3200    Teeth
- s 3201    Gums
- s 3202    Structure of palate
  - s 32020    Hard palate
  - s 32021    Soft palate
- s 3203    Tongue
- s 3204    Structure of lips
  - s 32040    Upper lip
  - s 32041    Lower lip
- s 3208    Structure of mouth, other specified
- s 3209    Structure of mouth, unspecified

### **s 330**    Structure of pharynx

- s 3300    Nasal pharynx
- s 3301    Oral pharynx
- s 3308    Structure of pharynx, other specified
- s 3309    Structure of pharynx, unspecified

- s 340**    Structure of larynx
  - s 3400    Vocal folds
  - s 3408    Structure of larynx, other specified
  - s 3409    Structure of larynx, unspecified
- s 398**    Structures involved in voice and speech, other specified
- s 399**    Structures involved in voice and speech, unspecified

## Chapter 4

# Structures of the cardiovascular, immunological and respiratory systems

### **s 410** Structure of cardiovascular system

#### s 4100 Heart

##### s 41000 Atria

##### s 41001 Ventricles

##### s 41008 Structure of heart, other specified

##### s 41009 Structure of heart, unspecified

#### s 4101 Arteries

#### s 4102 Veins

#### s 4103 Capillaries

#### s 4108 Structure of cardiovascular system, other specified

#### s 4109 Structure of cardiovascular system, unspecified

### **s 420** Structure of immune system

#### s 4200 Lymphatic vessels

#### s 4201 Lymphatic nodes

#### s 4202 Thymus

#### s 4203 Spleen

#### s 4204 Bone marrow

#### s 4208 Structure of immune system, other specified

#### s 4209 Structure of immune system, unspecified

### **s 430** Structure of respiratory system

#### s 4300 Trachea

**s 4301 Lungs****s 43010 Bronchial tree****s 43011 Alveoli****s 43018 Structure of lungs, other specified****s 43019 Structure of lungs, unspecified****s 4302 Thoracic cage****s 4303 Muscles of respiration****s 43030 Intercostal muscles****s 43031 Diaphragm****s 43038 Muscles of respiration, other specified****s 43039 Muscles of respiration, unspecified****s 4308 Structure of respiratory system, other specified****s 4309 Structure of respiratory system, unspecified****s 498 Structures of the cardiovascular, immunological and respiratory systems, other specified****s 499 Structures of the cardiovascular, immunological and respiratory systems, unspecified**



## Chapter 5

# Structures related to the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems

**s 510**    Structure of salivary glands

**s 520**    Structure of oesophagus

**s 530**    Structure of stomach

**s 540**    Structure of intestine

    s 5400    Small intestine

    s 5401    Large intestine

    s 5408    Structure of intestine, other specified

    s 5409    Structure of intestine, unspecified

**s 550**    Structure of pancreas

**s 560**    Structure of liver

**s 570**    Structure of gall bladder and ducts

**s 580**    Structure of endocrine glands

    s 5800    Pituitary gland

    s 5801    Thyroid gland

    s 5802    Parathyroid gland

    s 5803    Adrenal gland

    s 5808    Structure of endocrine glands, other specified

    s 5809    Structure of endocrine glands, unspecified

**s 598**    Structures related to the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems, other specified

**s 599**    Structures related to the digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems, unspecified

## Chapter 6

# Structures related to the genitourinary and reproductive systems

### **s 610**    Structure of urinary system

s 6100    Kidneys

s 6101    Ureters

s 6102    Urinary bladder

s 6103    Urethra

s 6108    Structure of urinary system, other specified

s 6109    Structure of urinary system, unspecified

### **s 620**    Structure of pelvic floor

### **s 630**    Structure of reproductive system

s 6300    Ovaries

s 6301    Structure of uterus

s 63010    Body of uterus

s 63011    Cervix

s 63012    Fallopian tubes

s 63018    Structure of uterus, other specified

s 63019    Structure of uterus, unspecified

s 6302    Breast and nipple

s 6303    Structure of vagina and external genitalia

s 63030    Clitoris

s 63031    Labia majora

s 63032    Labia minora

s 63033    Vaginal canal

- s 6304 Testes
- s 6305 Structure of the penis
  - s 63050 Glans penis
  - s 63051 Shaft of penis
  - s 63058 Structure of penis, other specified
  - s 63059 Structure of penis, unspecified
- s 6306 Prostate
- s 6308 Structures of reproductive system, other specified
- s 6309 Structures of reproductive system, unspecified
- s 698** Structures related to the genitourinary and reproductive systems, other specified
- s 699** Structures related to the genitourinary and reproductive systems, unspecified

## Chapter 7

# Structures related to movement

### **s710** Structure of head and neck region

- s7100 Bones of cranium
- s7101 Bones of face
- s7102 Bones of neck region
- s7103 Joints of head and neck region
- s7104 Muscles of head and neck region
- s7105 Ligaments and fasciae of head and neck region
- s7108 Structure of head and neck region, other specified
- s7109 Structure of head and neck region, unspecified

### **s720** Structure of shoulder region

- s7200 Bones of shoulder region
- s7201 Joints of shoulder region
- s7202 Muscles of shoulder region
- s7203 Ligaments and fasciae of shoulder region
- s7208 Structure of shoulder region, other specified
- s7209 Structure of shoulder region, unspecified

### **s730** Structure of upper extremity

- s7300 Structure of upper arm
  - s73000 Bones of upper arm
  - s73001 Elbow joint
  - s73002 Muscles of upper arm
  - s73003 Ligaments and fasciae of upper arm
  - s73008 Structure of upper arm, other specified



- s 73009 Structure of upper arm, unspecified
- s 7301 Structure of forearm
  - s 73010 Bones of forearm
  - s 73011 Wrist joint
  - s 73012 Muscles of forearm
  - s 73013 Ligaments and fasciae of forearm
  - s 73018 Structure of forearm, other specified
  - s 73019 Structure of forearm, unspecified
- s 7302 Structure of hand
  - s 73020 Bones of hand
  - s 73021 Joints of hand and fingers
  - s 73022 Muscles of hand
  - s 73023 Ligaments and fasciae of hand
  - s 73028 Structure of hand, other specified
  - s 73029 Structure of hand, unspecified
- s 7308 Structure of upper extremity, other specified
- s 7309 Structure of upper extremity, unspecified

**s 740**

## Structure of pelvic region

- s 7400 Bones of pelvic region
- s 7401 Joints of pelvic region
- s 7402 Muscles of pelvic region
- s 7403 Ligaments and fasciae of pelvic region
- s 7408 Structure of pelvic region, other specified
- s 7409 Structure of pelvic region, unspecified

**s 750**

## Structure of lower extremity

- s 7500 Structure of thigh

- s 75000 Bones of thigh
- s 75001 Hip joint
- s 75002 Muscles of thigh
- s 75003 Ligaments and fasciae of thigh
- s 75008 Structure of thigh, other specified
- s 75009 Structure of thigh, unspecified
- s 7501 Structure of lower leg
  - s 75010 Bones of lower leg
  - s 75011 Knee joint
  - s 75012 Muscles of lower leg
  - s 75013 Ligaments and fasciae of lower leg
  - s 75018 Structure of lower leg, other specified
  - s 75019 Structure of lower leg, unspecified
- s 7502 Structure of ankle and foot
  - s 75020 Bones of ankle and foot
  - s 75021 Ankle joint and joints of foot and toes
  - s 75022 Muscles of ankle and foot
  - s 75023 Ligaments and fasciae of ankle and foot
  - s 75028 Structure of ankle and foot, other specified
  - s 75029 Structure of ankle and foot, unspecified
- s 7508 Structure of lower extremity, other specified
- s 7509 Structure of lower extremity, unspecified
- s 760** Structure of trunk
  - s 7600 Structure of vertebral column
    - s 76000 Cervical vertebral column
    - s 76001 Thoracic vertebral column

- s 76002 Lumbar vertebral column
- s 76003 Sacral vertebral column
- s 76004 Coccyx
- s 76008 Structure of vertebral column, other specified
- s 76009 Structure of vertebral column, specified
- s 7601 Muscles of trunk
- s 7602 Ligaments and fasciae of trunk
- s 7608 Structure of trunk, other specified
- s 7609 Structure of trunk, unspecified
- s 770** Additional musculoskeletal structures related to movement
  - s 7700 Bones
  - s 7701 Joints
  - s 7702 Muscles
  - s 7703 Extra-articular ligaments, fasciae, extramuscular aponeuroses, retinacula, septa, bursae, unspecified
  - s 7708 Additional musculoskeletal structures related to movement, other specified
  - s 7709 Additional musculoskeletal structures related to movement, unspecified
- s 798** Structures related to movement, other specified
- s 799** Structures related to movement, unspecified

## Chapter 8

# Skin and related structures

### **s 810**    Structure of areas of skin

- s 8100    Skin of head and neck region
- s 8101    Skin of the shoulder region
- s 8102    Skin of upper extremity
- s 8103    Skin of pelvic region
- s 8104    Skin of lower extremity
- s 8105    Skin of trunk and back
- s 8108    Structure of areas of skin, other specified
- s 8109    Structure of areas of skin, unspecified

### **s 820**    Structure of skin glands

- s 8200    Sweat glands
- s 8201    Sebaceous glands
- s 8208    Structure of skin glands, other specified
- s 8209    Structure of skin glands, unspecified

### **s 830**    Structure of nails

- s 8300    Finger nails
- s 8301    Toe nails
- s 8308    Structure of nails, other specified
- s 8309    Structure of nails, unspecified

### **s 840**    Structure of hair

### **s 898**    Skin and related structures, other specified

### **s 899**    Skin and related structures, unspecified



# ACTIVITIES AND PARTICIPATION

*Definitions:*

*Activity is the execution of a task or action by an individual.*

*Participation is involvement in a life situation.*

*Activity limitations are difficulties an individual may have in executing activities.*

*Participation restrictions are problems an individual may experience in involvement in life situations.*

## Qualifiers

The domains for the Activities and Participation component are given in a single list that covers the full range of life areas (from basic learning and watching to composite areas such as social tasks). This component can be used to denote activities (a) or participation (p) or both.

The two qualifiers for the Activities and Participation component are the *performance* qualifier and the *capacity* qualifier. The performance qualifier describes what an individual does in his or her current environment. Because the current environment brings in a societal context, performance as recorded by this qualifier can also be understood as "involvement in a life situation" or "the lived experience" of people in the actual context in which they live. This context includes the environmental factors – all aspects of the physical, social and attitudinal world, which can be coded using the Environmental Factors component.

The capacity qualifier describes an individual's ability to execute a task or an action. This qualifier identifies the highest probable level of functioning that a person may reach in a given domain at a given moment. Capacity is measured in a uniform or standard environment, and thus reflects the environmentally adjusted ability of the individual. The Environmental Factors component can be used to describe the features of this uniform or standard environment.

Both capacity and performance qualifiers can be used both with and without assistive devices or personal assistance, and in accordance with the following scale:

xxx.0	NO difficulty	(none, absent, negligible,... )	0-4 %
xxx.1	MILD difficulty	(slight, low,...)	5-24 %
xxx.2	MODERATE difficulty	(medium, fair,...)	25-49 %
xxx.3	SEVERE difficulty	(high, extreme, ...)	50-95 %
xxx.4	COMPLETE difficulty	(total,...)	96-100 %
xxx.8	not specified		
xxx.9	not applicable		

Broad ranges of percentages are provided for those cases in which calibrated assessment instruments or other standards are available to quantify the performance problem or capacity limitation. For example, when no performance problem or a complete performance problem is coded, this scaling has a margin of error of up to 5%. A moderate performance problem is defined as up to half of the scale of a total performance problem. The percentages are to be calibrated in different domains with reference to population standards as percentiles. For this quantification to be used in a uniform manner, assessment procedures need to be developed through research.

For a further explanation of coding convention in ICF, refer to Annex 2.

## Chapter 1

# Learning and applying knowledge

This chapter is about learning, applying the knowledge that is learned, thinking, solving problems, and making decisions.

### *Purposeful sensory experiences (d110-d129)*

**d110**    **Watching**

Using the sense of seeing intentionally to experience visual stimuli, such as watching a sporting event or children playing.

**d115**    **Listening**

Using the sense of hearing intentionally to experience auditory stimuli, such as listening to a radio, music or a lecture.

**d120**    **Other purposeful sensing**

Using the body's other basic senses intentionally to experience stimuli, such as touching and feeling textures, tasting sweets or smelling flowers.

**d129**    **Purposeful sensory experiences, other specified and unspecified**

### *Basic learning (d130-d159)*

**d130**    **Copying**

Imitating or mimicking as a basic component of learning, such as copying a gesture, a sound or the letters of an alphabet.

**d135**    **Rehearsing**

Repeating a sequence of events or symbols as a basic component of learning, such as counting by tens or practising the recitation of a poem.

**d140**    **Learning to read**

Developing the competence to read written material (including Braille) with fluency and accuracy, such as recognizing characters and alphabets, sounding out words with correct pronunciation, and understanding words and phrases.

**d145**    **Learning to write**

Developing the competence to produce symbols that represent sounds, words or phrases in order to convey meaning (including Braille writing), such as spelling effectively and using correct grammar.

**d 150**    **Learning to calculate**

Developing the competence to manipulate numbers and perform simple and complex mathematical operations, such as using mathematical signs for addition and subtraction and applying the correct mathematical operation to a problem.

**d 155**    **Acquiring skills**

Developing basic and complex competencies in integrated sets of actions or tasks so as to initiate and follow through with the acquisition of a skill, such as manipulating tools or playing games like chess.

*Inclusions: acquiring basic and complex skills*

**d 1550**    **Acquiring basic skills**

Learning elementary, purposeful actions, such as learning to manipulate eating utensils, a pencil or a simple tool.

**d 1551**    **Acquiring complex skills**

Learning integrated sets of actions so as to follow rules, and to sequence and coordinate one's movements, such as learning to play games like football or to use a building tool.

**d 1558**    **Acquiring skills, other specified****d 1559**    **Acquiring skills, unspecified****d 159**    **Basic learning, other specified and unspecified**

## *Applying knowledge (d160-d179)*

**d 160**    **Focusing attention**

Intentionally focusing on specific stimuli, such as by filtering out distracting noises.

**d 163**    **Thinking**

Formulating and manipulating ideas, concepts, and images, whether goal-oriented or not, either alone or with others, such as creating fiction, proving a theorem, playing with ideas, brainstorming, meditating, pondering, speculating, or reflecting.

*Exclusions: solving problems (d175); making decisions (d177)*



**d166 Reading**

Performing activities involved in the comprehension and interpretation of written language (e.g. books, instructions or newspapers in text or Braille), for the purpose of obtaining general knowledge or specific information.

*Exclusion: learning to read (d140)*

**d170 Writing**

Using or producing symbols or language to convey information, such as producing a written record of events or ideas or drafting a letter.

*Exclusion: learning to write (d145)*

**d172 Calculating**

Performing computations by applying mathematical principles to solve problems that are described in words and producing or displaying the results, such as computing the sum of three numbers or finding the result of dividing one number by another.

*Exclusion: learning to calculate (d150)*

**d175 Solving problems**

Finding solutions to questions or situations by identifying and analysing issues, developing options and solutions, evaluating potential effects of solutions, and executing a chosen solution, such as in resolving a dispute between two people.

*Inclusions: solving simple and complex problems*

*Exclusions: thinking (d163); making decisions (d177)*

**d1750 Solving simple problems**

Finding solutions to a simple problem involving a single issue or question, by identifying and analysing the issue, developing solutions, evaluating the potential effects of the solutions and executing a chosen solution.

**d1751 Solving complex problems**

Finding solutions to a complex problem involving multiple and interrelated issues, or several related problems, by identifying and analysing the issue, developing solutions, evaluating the potential effects of the solutions and executing a chosen solution.

**d1758 Solving problems, other specified****d1759 Solving problems, unspecified**

**d177**    **Making decisions**  
Making a choice among options, implementing the choice, and evaluating the effects of the choice, such as selecting and purchasing a specific item, or deciding to undertake and undertaking one task from among several tasks that need to be done.

*Exclusions: thinking (d163); solving problems (d175)*

**d179**    **Applying knowledge, other specified and unspecified**

**d198**    **Learning and applying knowledge, other specified**

**d199**    **Learning and applying knowledge, unspecified**

## Chapter 2

# General tasks and demands

This chapter is about general aspects of carrying out single or multiple tasks, organizing routines and handling stress. These items can be used in conjunction with more specific tasks or actions to identify the underlying features of the execution of tasks under different circumstances.

### **d210** Undertaking a single task

Carrying out simple or complex and coordinated actions related to the mental and physical components of a single task, such as initiating a task, organizing time, space and materials for a task, pacing task performance, and carrying out, completing, and sustaining a task.

*Inclusions: undertaking a simple or complex task; undertaking a single task independently or in a group*

*Exclusions: acquiring skills (d155); solving problems (d175); making decisions (d177); undertaking multiple tasks (d220)*

#### **d 2100** Undertaking a simple task

Preparing, initiating and arranging the time and space required for a simple task; executing a simple task with a single major component, such as reading a book, writing a letter, or making one's bed.

#### **d 2101** Undertaking a complex task

Preparing, initiating and arranging the time and space for a single complex task; executing a complex task with more than one component, which may be carried out in sequence or simultaneously, such as arranging the furniture in one's home or completing an assignment for school.

#### **d 2102** Undertaking a single task independently

Preparing, initiating and arranging the time and space for a simple or complex task; managing and executing a task on one's own and without the assistance of others.

#### **d 2103** Undertaking a single task in a group

Preparing, initiating and arranging the time and space for a single task, simple or complex; managing and executing a task with people who are involved in some or all steps of the task.

#### **d 2108** Undertaking single tasks, other specified

#### **d 2109** Undertaking single tasks, unspecified

**d 220 Undertaking multiple tasks**

Carrying out simple or complex and coordinated actions as components of multiple, integrated and complex tasks in sequence or simultaneously.

*Inclusions: undertaking multiple tasks; completing multiple tasks; undertaking multiple tasks independently and in a group*

*Exclusions: acquiring skills (d155); solving problems (d175); making decisions (d177); undertaking a single task (d210)*

**d 2200 Carrying out multiple tasks**

Preparing, initiating and arranging the time and space needed for several tasks, and managing and executing several tasks, together or sequentially.

**d 2201 Completing multiple tasks**

Completing several tasks, together or sequentially.

**d 2202 Undertaking multiple tasks independently**

Preparing, initiating and arranging the time and space for multiple tasks, and managing and executing several tasks together or sequentially, on one's own and without the assistance of others.

**d 2203 Undertaking multiple tasks in a group**

Preparing, initiating and arranging the time and space for multiple tasks, and managing and executing several tasks together or sequentially with others who are involved in some or all steps of the multiple tasks.

**d 2208 Undertaking multiple tasks, other specified****d 2209 Undertaking multiple tasks, unspecified****d 230 Carrying out daily routine**

Carrying out simple or complex and coordinated actions in order to plan, manage and complete the requirements of day-to-day procedures or duties, such as budgeting time and making plans for separate activities throughout the day.

*Inclusions: managing and completing the daily routine; managing one's own activity level*

*Exclusion: undertaking multiple tasks (d220)*



**d 2301 Managing daily routine**

Carrying out simple or complex and coordinated actions in order to plan and manage the requirements of day-to-day procedures or duties.

**d 2302 Completing the daily routine**

Carrying out simple or complex and coordinated actions in order to complete the requirements of day-to-day procedures or duties.

**d 2303 Managing one's own activity level**

Carrying out actions and behaviours to arrange the requirements in energy and time day-to-day procedures or duties.

**d 2308 Carrying out daily routine, other specified****d 2309 Carrying out daily routine, unspecified****d 240 Handling stress and other psychological demands**

Carrying out simple or complex and coordinated actions to manage and control the psychological demands required to carry out tasks demanding significant responsibilities and involving stress, distraction, or crises, such as driving a vehicle during heavy traffic or taking care of many children.

*Inclusions: handling responsibilities; handling stress and crisis*

**d 2400 Handling responsibilities**

Carrying out simple or complex and coordinated actions to manage the duties of task performance and to assess the requirements of these duties.

**d 2401 Handling stress**

Carrying out simple or complex and coordinated actions to cope with pressure, emergencies or stress associated with task performance.

**d 2402 Handling crisis**

Carrying out simple or complex and coordinated actions to cope with decisive turning points in a situation or times of acute danger or difficulty.

**d 2408 Handling stress and other psychological demands, other specified**

d 2409 Handling stress and other psychological demands,  
unspecified

**d 298** General tasks and demands, other specified

**d 299** General tasks and demands, unspecified

## Chapter 3

# Communication

This chapter is about general and specific features of communicating by language, signs and symbols, including receiving and producing messages, carrying on conversations, and using communication devices and techniques.

### *Communicating - receiving (d310-d329)*

#### **d310** Communicating with - receiving - spoken messages

Comprehending literal and implied meanings of messages in spoken language, such as understanding that a statement asserts a fact or is an idiomatic expression.

#### **d315** Communicating with - receiving - nonverbal messages

Comprehending the literal and implied meanings of messages conveyed by gestures, symbols and drawings, such as realizing that a child is tired when she rubs her eyes or that a warning bell means that there is a fire.

*Inclusions: communicating with - receiving - body gestures, general signs and symbols, drawings and photographs*

#### **d3150** Communicating with - receiving - body gestures

Comprehending the meaning conveyed by facial expressions, hand movements or signs, body postures, and other forms of body language.

#### **d3151** Communicating with - receiving - general signs and symbols

Comprehending the meaning represented by public signs and symbols, such as traffic signs, warning symbols, musical or scientific notations, and icons.

#### **d3152** Communicating with - receiving - drawings and photographs

Comprehending the meaning represented by drawings (e.g. line drawings, graphic designs, paintings, three-dimensional representations), graphs, charts and photographs, such as understanding that an upward line on a height chart indicates that a child is growing.

#### **d3158** Communicating with - receiving - nonverbal messages, other specified

#### **d3159** Communicating with - receiving - nonverbal messages, unspecified

**d 320**    **Communicating with - receiving - formal sign language messages**  
Receiving and comprehending messages in formal sign language with literal and implied meaning.

**d 325**    **Communicating with - receiving - written messages**  
Comprehending the literal and implied meanings of messages that are conveyed through written language (including Braille), such as following political events in the daily newspaper or understanding the intent of religious scripture.

**d 329**    **Communicating - receiving, other specified and unspecified**

### *Communicating - producing (d330-d349)*

**d 330**    **Speaking**  
Producing words, phrases and longer passages in spoken messages with literal and implied meaning, such as expressing a fact or telling a story in oral language.

**d 335**    **Producing nonverbal messages**  
Using gestures, symbols and drawings to convey messages, such as shaking one's head to indicate disagreement or drawing a picture or diagram to convey a fact or complex idea.

*Inclusions: producing body gestures, signs, symbols, drawings and photographs*

**d 3350**    **Producing body language**  
Conveying meaning by movements of the body, such as facial gestures (e.g. smiling, frowning, wincing), arm and hand movements, and postures (e.g. such as embracing to indicate affection).

**d 3351**    **Producing signs and symbols**  
Conveying meaning by using signs and symbols (e.g. icons, Bliss board, scientific symbols) and symbolic notation systems, such as using musical notation to convey a melody.

**d 3352**    **Producing drawings and photographs**  
Conveying meaning by drawing, painting, sketching, and making diagrams, pictures or photographs, such as drawing a map to give someone directions to a location.

**d 3358**    **Producing nonverbal messages, other specified**

**d 3359**    **Producing nonverbal messages, unspecified**



- d 340**    **Producing messages in formal sign language**  
Conveying, with formal sign language, literal and implied meaning.
- d 345**    **Writing messages**  
Producing the literal and implied meanings of messages that are conveyed through written language, such as writing a letter to a friend.
- d 349**    **Communication - producing, other specified and unspecified**

## *Conversation and use of communication devices and techniques (d350-d369)*

- d 350**    **Conversation**  
Starting, sustaining and ending an interchange of thoughts and ideas, carried out by means of spoken, written, sign or other forms of language, with one or more people one knows or who are strangers, in formal or casual settings.  
*Inclusions: starting, sustaining and ending a conversation; conversing with one or many people*
- d 3500**    **Starting a conversation**  
Beginning a dialogue or interchange, such as by introducing oneself, expressing customary greetings, and introducing a topic or asking questions.
- d 3501**    **Sustaining a conversation**  
Continuing and shaping a dialogue or interchange by adding ideas, introducing a new topic or retrieving a topic that has been previously mentioned, as well as by taking turns in speaking or signing.
- d 3502**    **Ending a conversation**  
Finishing a dialogue or interchange with customary termination statements or expressions and by bringing closure to the topic under discussion.
- d 3503**    **Conversing with one person**  
Initiating, maintaining, shaping and terminating a dialogue or interchange with one person, such as in discussing the weather with a friend.

**d 3504    Conversing with many people**

Initiating, maintaining, shaping and terminating a dialogue or interchange with more than one individual, such as in starting and participating in a group interchange.

**d 3508    Conversation, other specified****d 3509    Conversation, unspecified****d 355    Discussion**

Starting, sustaining and ending an examination of a matter, with arguments for or against, or debate carried out by means of spoken, written, sign or other forms of language, with one or more people one knows or who are strangers, in formal or casual settings.

*Inclusion: discussion with one person or many people*

**d 3550    Discussion with one person**

Initiating, maintaining, shaping or terminating an argument or debate with one person.

**d 3551    Discussion with many people**

Initiating, maintaining, shaping or terminating an argument or debate with more than one individual.

**d 3558    Discussion, other specified****d 3559    Discussion, unspecified****d 360    Using communication devices and techniques**

Using devices, techniques and other means for the purposes of communicating, such as calling a friend on the telephone.

*Inclusions: using telecommunication devices, using writing machines and communication techniques*

**d 3600    Using telecommunication devices**

Using telephones and other machines, such as facsimile or telex machines, as a means of communication.

**d 3601    Using writing machines**

Using machines for writing, such as typewriters, computers and Braille writers, as a means of communication.

**d 3602    Using communication techniques**

Performing actions and tasks involved in techniques for communicating, such as reading lips.

d 3608 Using communication devices and techniques, other specified

d 3609 Using communication devices and techniques, unspecified

**d 369** Conversation and use of communication devices and techniques, other specified and unspecified

**d 398** Communication, other specified

**d 399** Communication, unspecified

## Chapter 4

# Mobility

This chapter is about moving by changing body position or location or by transferring from one place to another, by carrying, moving or manipulating objects, by walking, running or climbing, and by using various forms of transportation.

### *Changing and maintaining body position (d410-d429)*

#### **d410** Changing basic body position

Getting into and out of a body position and moving from one location to another, such as getting up out of a chair to lie down on a bed, and getting into and out of positions of kneeling or squatting.

*Inclusion: changing body position from lying down, from squatting or kneeling, from sitting or standing, bending and shifting the body's centre of gravity*

*Exclusion: transferring oneself (d420)*

##### **d4100** Lying down

Getting into and out of a lying down position or changing body position from horizontal to any other position, such as standing up or sitting down.

*Inclusion: getting into a prostrate position*

##### **d4101** Squatting

Getting into and out of the seated or crouched posture on one's haunches with knees closely drawn up or sitting on one's heels, such as may be necessary in toilets that are at floor level, or changing body position from squatting to any other position, such as standing up.

##### **d4102** Kneeling

Getting into and out of a position where the body is supported by the knees with legs bent, such as during prayers, or changing body position from kneeling to any other position, such as standing up.



**d 4103 Sitting**

Getting into and out of a seated position and changing body position from sitting down to any other position, such as standing up or lying down.

*Inclusions: getting into a sitting position with bent legs or cross-legged; getting into a sitting position with feet supported or unsupported*

**d 4104 Standing**

Getting into and out of a standing position or changing body position from standing to any other position, such as lying down or sitting down.

**d 4105 Bending**

Tilting the back downwards or to the side, at the torso, such as in bowing or reaching down for an object.

**d 4106 Shifting the body's centre of gravity**

Adjusting or moving the weight of the body from one position to another while sitting, standing or lying, such as moving from one foot to another while standing.

*Exclusions: transferring oneself (d420); walking (d450)*

**d 4108 Changing basic body position, other specified****d 4109 Changing basic body position, unspecified****d 415 Maintaining a body position**

Staying in the same body position as required, such as remaining seated or remaining standing for work or school.

*Inclusions: maintaining a lying, squatting, kneeling, sitting and standing position*

**d 4150 Maintaining a lying position**

Staying in a lying position for some time as required, such as remaining in a prone position in a bed.

*Inclusions: staying in a prone (face down or prostrate), supine (face upwards) or side-lying position*

**d 4151 Maintaining a squatting position**

Staying in a squatting position for some time as required, such as when sitting on the floor without a seat.

**d 4152 Maintaining a kneeling position**

Staying in a kneeling position where the body is supported by the knees with legs bent for some time as required, such as during prayers in church.

**d 4153 Maintaining a sitting position**

Staying in a seated position, on a seat or the floor, for some time as required, such as when sitting at a desk or table.

*Inclusions: staying in a sitting position with straight legs or cross-legged, with feet supported or unsupported*

**d 4154 Maintaining a standing position**

Staying in a standing position for some time as required, such as when standing in a queue.

*Inclusions: staying in a standing position on a slope, on slippery or hard surfaces*

**d 4158 Maintaining a body position, other specified****d 4159 Maintaining a body position, unspecified****d 420 Transferring oneself**

Moving from one surface to another, such as sliding along a bench or moving from a bed to a chair, without changing body position.

*Inclusions: transferring oneself while sitting or lying*

*Exclusion: changing basic body position (d410)*

**d 4200 Transferring oneself while sitting**

Moving from a sitting position on one seat to another seat on the same or a different level, such as moving from a chair to a bed.

*Inclusions: moving from a chair to another seat, such as a toilet seat; moving from a wheelchair to a car seat*

*Exclusion: changing basic body position (d410)*

**d 4201 Transferring oneself while lying**

Moving from one lying position to another on the same or a different level, such as moving from one bed to another.

*Exclusion: changing basic body position (d410)*

**d 4208 Transferring oneself, other specified****d 4209 Transferring oneself, unspecified**

- d 429** Changing and maintaining body position, other specified and unspecified

## *Carrying, moving and handling objects (d430-d449)*

**d 430** Lifting and carrying objects

Raising up an object or taking something from one place to another, such as when lifting a cup or carrying a child from one room to another.

*Inclusions: lifting, carrying in the hands or arms, or on shoulders, hip, back or head; putting down*

**d 4300** Lifting

Raising up an object in order to move it from a lower to a higher level, such as when lifting a glass from the table.

**d 4301** Carrying in the hands

Taking or transporting an object from one place to another using the hands, such as when carrying a drinking glass or a suitcase.

**d 4302** Carrying in the arms

Taking or transporting an object from one place to another using the arms and hands, such as when carrying a child.

**d 4303** Carrying on shoulders, hip and back

Taking or transporting an object from one place to another using the shoulders, hip or back, or some combination of these, such as when carrying a large parcel.

**d 4304** Carrying on the head

Taking or transporting an object from one place to another using the head, such when as carrying a container of water on the head.

**d 4305** Putting down objects

Using hands, arms or other parts of the body to place an object down on a surface or place, such as when lowering a container of water to the ground.

**d 4308** Lifting and carrying, other specified

**d 4309** Lifting and carrying, unspecified

**d 435 Moving objects with lower extremities**

Performing coordinated actions aimed at moving an object by using the legs and feet, such as kicking a ball or pushing pedals on a bicycle.

*Inclusions: pushing with lower extremities; kicking*

**d 4350 Pushing with lower extremities**

Using the legs and feet to exert a force on an object to move it away, such as pushing a chair away with a foot.

**d 4351 Kicking**

Using the legs and feet to propel something away, such as kicking a ball.

**d 4358 Moving objects with lower extremities, other specified****d 4359 Moving objects with lower extremities, unspecified****d 440 Fine hand use**

Performing the coordinated actions of handling objects, picking up, manipulating and releasing them using one's hand, fingers and thumb, such as required to lift coins off a table or turn a dial or knob.

*Inclusions: picking up, grasping, manipulating and releasing*

*Exclusion: lifting and carrying objects (d430)*

**d 4400 Picking up**

Lifting or taking up a small object with hands and fingers, such as when picking up a pencil.

**d 4401 Grasping**

Using one or both hands to seize and hold something, such as when grasping a tool or a door knob.

**d 4402 Manipulating**

Using fingers and hands to exert control over, direct or guide something, such as when handling coins or other small objects.

**d 4403 Releasing**

Using fingers and hands to let go or set free something so that it falls or changes position, such as when dropping an item of clothing.

**d 4408 Fine hand use, other specified****d 4409 Fine hand use, unspecified**



**d 445 Hand and arm use**

Performing the coordinated actions required to move objects or to manipulate them by using hands and arms, such as when turning door handles or throwing or catching an object.

*Inclusions: pulling or pushing objects; reaching; turning or twisting the hands or arms; throwing; catching*

*Exclusion: fine hand use (d440)*

**d 4450 Pulling**

Using fingers, hands and arms to bring an object towards oneself, or to move it from place to place, such as when pulling a door closed.

**d 4451 Pushing**

Using fingers, hands and arms to move something from oneself, or to move it from place to place, such as when pushing an animal away.

**d 4452 Reaching**

Using the hands and arms to extend outwards and touch and grasp something, such as when reaching across a table or desk for a book.

**d 4453 Turning or twisting the hands or arms**

Using fingers, hands and arms to rotate, turn or bend an object, such as is required to use tools or utensils.

**d 4454 Throwing**

Using fingers, hands and arms to lift something and propel it with some force through the air, such as when tossing a ball.

**d 4455 Catching**

Using fingers, hands and arms to grasp a moving object in order to bring it to a stop and hold it, such as when catching a ball.

**d 4458 Hand and arm use, other specified****d 4459 Hand and arm use, unspecified****d 449 Carrying, moving and handling objects, other specified and unspecified**

## Walking and moving (d450-d469)

### **d 450** Walking

Moving along a surface on foot, step by step, so that one foot is always on the ground, such as when strolling, sauntering, walking forwards, backwards, or sideways.

*Inclusions: walking short or long distances; walking on different surfaces; walking around obstacles*

*Exclusions: transferring oneself (d420); moving around (d455)*

#### **d 4500** Walking short distances

Walking for less than a kilometre, such as walking around rooms or hallways, within a building or for short distances outside.

#### **d 4501** Walking long distances

Walking for more than a kilometre, such as across a village or town, between villages or across open areas.

#### **d 4502** Walking on different surfaces

Walking on sloping, uneven, or moving surfaces, such as on grass, gravel or ice and snow, or walking aboard a ship, train or other vehicle.

#### **d 4503** Walking around obstacles

Walking in ways required to avoid moving and immobile objects, people, animals, and vehicles, such as walking around a marketplace or shop, around or through traffic or other crowded areas.

#### **d 4508** Walking, other specified

#### **d 4509** Walking, unspecified

### **d 455** Moving around

Moving the whole body from one place to another by means other than walking, such as climbing over a rock or running down a street, skipping, scampering, jumping, somersaulting or running around obstacles.

*Inclusions: crawling, climbing, running, jogging, jumping, and swimming*

*Exclusions: transferring oneself (d420); walking (d450)*

**d 4550 Crawling**

Moving the whole body in a prone position from one place to another on hands, or hands and arms, and knees.

**d 4551 Climbing**

Moving the whole body upwards or downwards, over surfaces or objects, such as climbing steps, rocks, ladders or stairs, curbs or other objects.

**d 4552 Running**

Moving with quick steps so that both feet may be simultaneously off the ground.

**d 4553 Jumping**

Moving up off the ground by bending and extending the legs, such as jumping on one foot, hopping, skipping and jumping or diving into water.

**d 4554 Swimming**

Propelling the whole body through water by means of limb and body movements without taking support from the ground underneath.

**d 4558 Moving around, other specified****d 4559 Moving around, unspecified****d 460 Moving around in different locations**

Walking and moving around in various places and situations, such as walking between rooms in a house, within a building, or down the street of a town.

*Inclusions: moving around within the home, crawling or climbing within the home; walking or moving within buildings other than the home, and outside the home and other buildings*

**d 4600 Moving around within the home**

Walking and moving around in one's home, within a room, between rooms, and around the whole residence or living area.

*Inclusions: moving from floor to floor, on an attached balcony, courtyard, porch or garden*

- d 4601 Moving around within buildings other than home**  
Walking and moving around within buildings other than one's residence, such as moving around other people's homes, other private buildings, community and private or public buildings and enclosed areas.

*Inclusions: moving throughout all parts of buildings and enclosed areas, between floors, inside, outside and around buildings, both public and private*

- d 4602 Moving around outside the home and other buildings**  
Walking and moving around close to or far from one's home and other buildings, without the use of transportation, public or private, such as walking for short or long distances around a town or village.

*Inclusions: walking or moving down streets in the neighbourhood, town, village or city; moving between cities and further distances, without using transportation*

- d 4608 Moving around in different locations, other specified**

- d 4609 Moving around in different locations, unspecified**

**d 465 Moving around using equipment**

Moving the whole body from place to place, on any surface or space, by using specific devices designed to facilitate moving or create other ways of moving around, such as with skates, skis, or scuba equipment, or moving down the street in a wheelchair or a walker.

*Exclusions: transferring oneself (d420); walking (d450); moving around (d455); using transportation (d470); driving (d475)*

**d 469 Walking and moving, other specified and unspecified**

## *Moving around using transportation (d470-d489)*

**d 470 Using transportation**

Using transportation to move around as a passenger, such as being driven in a car or on a bus, rickshaw, jitney, animal-powered vehicle, or private or public taxi, bus, train, tram, subway, boat or aircraft.

*Inclusions: using human-powered transportation; using private motorized or public transportation*

*Exclusions: moving around using equipment (d465); driving (d475)*



**d 4700 Using human-powered vehicles**

Being transported as a passenger by a mode of transportation powered by one or more people, such as riding in a rickshaw or rowboat.

**d 4701 Using private motorized transportation**

Being transported as a passenger by private motorized vehicle over land, sea or air, such as by a taxi or privately owned aircraft or boat.

**d 4702 Using public motorized transportation**

Being transported as a passenger by a motorized vehicle over land, sea or air designed for public transportation, such as being a passenger on a bus, train, subway or aircraft.

**d 4708 Using transportation, other specified****d 4709 Using transportation, unspecified****d 475 Driving**

Being in control of and moving a vehicle or the animal that draws it, travelling under one's own direction or having at one's disposal any form of transportation, such as a car, bicycle, boat or animal-powered vehicle.

*Inclusions: driving human-powered transportation, motorized vehicles, animal-powered vehicles*

*Exclusions: moving around using equipment (d465); using transportation (d470)*

**d 4750 Driving human-powered transportation**

Driving a human-powered vehicle, such as a bicycle, tricycle, or rowboat.

**d 4751 Driving motorized vehicles**

Driving a vehicle with a motor, such as an automobile, motorcycle, motorboat or aircraft.

**d 4752 Driving animal-powered vehicles**

Driving a vehicle powered by an animal, such as a horse-drawn cart or carriage.

**d 4758 Driving, other specified****d 4759 Driving, unspecified**

**d 480** Riding animals for transportation  
travelling on the back of an animal, such as a horse, ox, camel or elephant

*Exclusions: driving (d475); recreation and leisure (d920)*

**d 489** Moving around using transportation, other specified and unspecified

**d 498** Mobility, other specified

**d 499** Mobility, unspecified

## Chapter 5

# Self-care

This chapter is about caring for oneself, washing and drying oneself, caring for one's body and body parts, dressing, eating and drinking, and looking after one's health.

### **d510** Washing oneself

Washing and drying one's whole body, or body parts, using water and appropriate cleaning and drying materials or methods, such as bathing, showering, washing hands and feet, face and hair, and drying with a towel.

*Inclusions: washing body parts, the whole body; and drying oneself*

*Exclusions: caring for body parts (d520); toileting (d530)*

#### **d5100** Washing body parts

Applying water, soap and other substances to body parts, such as hands, face, feet, hair or nails, in order to clean them.

#### **d5101** Washing whole body

Applying water, soap and other substances to the whole body in order to clean oneself, such as taking a bath or shower.

#### **d5102** Drying oneself

Using a towel or other means for drying some part or parts of one's body, or the whole body, such as after washing.

#### **d5108** Washing oneself, other specified

#### **d5109** Washing oneself, unspecified

### **d520** Caring for body parts

Looking after those parts of the body, such as skin, face, teeth, scalp, nails and genitals, that require more than washing and drying.

*Inclusions: caring for skin, teeth, hair, finger and toe nails*

*Exclusions: washing oneself (d510); toileting (d530)*

#### **d5200** Caring for skin

Looking after the texture and hydration of one's skin, such as by removing calluses or corns and using moisturizing lotions or cosmetics.

**d 5201 Caring for teeth**  
Looking after dental hygiene, such as by brushing teeth, flossing, and taking care of a dental prosthesis or orthosis.

**d 5202 Caring for hair**  
Looking after the hair on the head and face, such as by combing, styling, shaving, or trimming.

**d 5203 Caring for fingernails**  
Cleaning, trimming or polishing the nails of the fingers.

**d 5204 Caring for toenails**  
Cleaning, trimming or polishing the nails of the toes.

**d 5208 Caring for body parts, other specified**

**d 5209 Caring for body parts, unspecified**

**d 530 Toileting**

Planning and carrying out the elimination of human waste (menstruation, urination and defecation), and cleaning oneself afterwards.

*Inclusions: regulating urination, defecation and menstrual care*

*Exclusions: washing oneself (d510); caring for body parts (d520)*

**d 5300 Regulating urination**  
Coordinating and managing urination, such as by indicating need, getting into the proper position, choosing and getting to an appropriate place for urination, manipulating clothing before and after urination, and cleaning oneself after urination.

**d 5301 Regulating defecation**  
Coordinating and managing defecation such as by indicating need, getting into the proper position, choosing and getting to an appropriate place for defecation, manipulating clothing before and after defecation, and cleaning oneself after defecation.

**d 5302 Menstrual care**  
Coordinating, planning and caring for menstruation, such as by anticipating menstruation and using sanitary towels and napkins.

**d 5308 Toileting, other specified**



**d5309 Toileting, unspecified****d540 Dressing**

Carrying out the coordinated actions and tasks of putting on and taking off clothes and footwear in sequence and in keeping with climatic and social conditions, such as by putting on, adjusting and removing shirts, skirts, blouses, pants, undergarments, saris, kimono, tights, hats, gloves, coats, shoes, boots, sandals and slippers.

*Inclusions: putting on or taking off clothes and footwear and choosing appropriate clothing*

**d5400 Putting on clothes**

Carrying out the coordinated tasks of putting clothes on various parts of the body, such as putting clothes on over the head, over the arms and shoulders, and on the lower and upper halves of the body; putting on gloves and headgear.

**d5401 Taking off clothes**

Carrying out the coordinated tasks of taking clothes off various parts of the body, such as pulling clothes off and over the head, off the arms and shoulders, and off the lower and upper halves of the body; taking off gloves and headgear.

**d5402 Putting on footwear**

Carrying out the coordinated tasks of putting on socks, stockings and footwear.

**d5403 Taking off footwear**

Carrying out the coordinated tasks of taking off socks, stockings and footwear.

**d5404 Choosing appropriate clothing**

Following implicit or explicit dress codes and conventions of one's society or culture and dressing in keeping with climatic conditions.

**d5408 Dressing, other specified****d5409 Dressing, unspecified****d550 Eating**

Carrying out the coordinated tasks and actions of eating food that has been served, bringing it to the mouth and consuming it in culturally acceptable ways, cutting or breaking food into pieces, opening bottles and cans, using eating implements, having meals, feasting or dining.

*Exclusion: drinking (d560)*

**d 560**    **Drinking**

Taking hold of a drink, bringing it to the mouth, and consuming the drink in culturally acceptable ways, mixing, stirring and pouring liquids for drinking, opening bottles and cans, drinking through a straw or drinking running water such as from a tap or a spring; feeding from the breast.

*Exclusion: eating (d550)*

**d 570**    **Looking after one's health**

Ensuring physical comfort, health and physical and mental well-being, such as by maintaining a balanced diet, and an appropriate level of physical activity, keeping warm or cool, avoiding harms to health, following safe sex practices, including using condoms, getting immunizations and regular physical examinations.

*Inclusions: ensuring one's physical comfort; managing diet and fitness; maintaining one's health*

**d 5700**    **Ensuring one's physical comfort**

Caring for oneself by being aware that one needs to ensure, and ensuring, that one's body is in a comfortable position, that one is not feeling too hot or cold, and that one has adequate lighting.

**d 5701**    **Managing diet and fitness**

Caring for oneself by being aware of the need and by selecting and consuming nutritious foods and maintaining physical fitness.

**d 5702**    **Maintaining one's health**

Caring for oneself by being aware of the need and doing what is required to look after one's health, both to respond to risks to health and to prevent ill-health, such as by seeking professional assistance; following medical and other health advice; and avoiding risks to health such as physical injury, communicable diseases, drug-taking and sexually transmitted diseases.

**d 5708**    **Looking after one's health, other specified****d 5709**    **Looking after one's health, unspecified****d 598**    **Self-care, other specified****d 599**    **Self-care, unspecified**

## Chapter 6

# Domestic life

This chapter is about carrying out domestic and everyday actions and tasks. Areas of domestic life include acquiring a place to live, food, clothing and other necessities, household cleaning and repairing, caring for personal and other household objects, and assisting others.

### *Acquisition of necessities (d610-d629)*

#### **d610** Acquiring a place to live

Buying, renting, furnishing and arranging a house, apartment or other dwelling.

*Inclusions: buying or renting a place to live and furnishing a place to live*

*Exclusions: acquisition of goods and services (d620); caring for household objects (d650)*

#### **d6100** Buying a place to live

Acquiring ownership of a house, apartment or other dwelling.

#### **d6101** Renting a place to live

Acquiring the use of a house, apartment or other dwelling belonging to another in exchange for payment.

#### **d6102** Furnishing a place to live

Equipping and arranging a living space with furniture, fixtures and other fittings and decorating rooms.

#### **d6108** Acquiring a place to live, other specified

#### **d6109** Acquiring a place to live, unspecified

#### **d620** Acquisition of goods and services

Selecting, procuring and transporting all goods and services required for daily living, such as selecting, procuring, transporting and storing food, drink, clothing, cleaning materials, fuel, household items, utensils, cooking ware, domestic appliance and tools; procuring utilities and other household services.

*Inclusions: shopping and gathering daily necessities*

*Exclusion: acquiring a place to live (d610)*



**d 6200 Shopping**

Obtaining, in exchange for money, goods and services required for daily living (including instructing and supervising an intermediary to do the shopping), such as selecting food, drink, cleaning materials, household items or clothing in a shop or market; comparing quality and price of the items required, negotiating and paying for selected goods or services, and transporting goods.

**d 6201 Gathering daily necessities**

Obtaining, without exchange of money, goods and services required for daily living (including instructing and supervising an intermediate to gather daily necessities), such as by harvesting vegetables and fruits and getting water and fuel.

**d 6208 Acquisition of goods and services, other specified****d 6209 Acquisition of goods and services, unspecified****d 629 Acquisition of necessities, other specified and unspecified*****Household tasks (d630-d649)*****d 630 Preparing meals**

Planning, organizing, cooking and serving simple and complex meals for oneself and others, such as by making a menu, selecting edible food and drink, getting together ingredients for preparing meals, cooking with heat and preparing cold foods and drinks, and serving the food.

*Inclusions: preparing simple and complex meals*

*Exclusions: eating (d550); drinking (d560); acquisition of goods and services (d620); doing housework (d640); caring for household objects (d650); caring for others (d660)*

**d 6300 Preparing simple meals**

Organizing, cooking and serving meals with a small number of ingredients that require easy methods of preparation and serving, such as making a snack or small meal, and transforming food ingredients by cutting and stirring, boiling and heating food such as rice or potatoes.



**d 6301 Preparing complex meals**

Planning, organizing, cooking and serving meals with a large number of ingredients that require complex methods of preparation and serving, such as planning a meal with several dishes, and transforming food ingredients by combined actions of peeling, slicing, mixing, kneading, stirring, presenting and serving food in a manner appropriate to the occasion and culture.

*Exclusion: using household appliances (d6403)*

**d 6308 Preparing meals, other specified****d 6309 Preparing meals, unspecified****d 640 Doing housework**

Managing a household by cleaning the house, washing clothes, using household appliances, storing food and disposing of garbage, such as by sweeping, mopping, washing counters, walls and other surfaces; collecting and disposing of household garbage; tidying rooms, closets and drawers; collecting, washing, drying, folding and ironing clothes; cleaning footwear; using brooms, brushes and vacuum cleaners; using washing machines, driers and irons.

*Inclusions: washing and drying clothes and garments; cleaning cooking area and utensils; cleaning living area; using household appliances, storing daily necessities and disposing of garbage*

*Exclusions: acquiring a place to live (d610); acquisition of goods and services (d620); preparing meals (d630); caring for household objects (d650); caring for others (d660)*

**d 6400 Washing and drying clothes and garments**

Washing clothes and garments by hand and hanging them out to dry in the air.

**d 6401 Cleaning cooking area and utensils**

Cleaning up after cooking, such as by washing dishes, pans, pots and cooking utensils, and cleaning tables and floors around cooking and eating area.

**d 6402 Cleaning living area**

Cleaning the living areas of the household, such as by tidying and dusting, sweeping, swabbing, mopping floors, cleaning windows and walls, cleaning bathrooms and toilets, cleaning household furnishings.

**d 6403 Using household appliances**

Using all kinds of household appliances, such as washing machines, driers, irons, vacuum cleaners and dishwashers.

**d 6404 Storing daily necessities**

Storing food, drinks, clothes and other household goods required for daily living; preparing food for conservation by canning, salting or refrigerating; keeping food fresh and out of the reach of animals.

**d 6405 Disposing of garbage**

Disposing of household garbage such as by collecting trash and rubbish around the house, preparing garbage for disposal, using garbage disposal appliances; burning garbage.

**d 6408 Doing housework, other specified****d 6409 Doing housework, unspecified****d 649 Household tasks, other specified and unspecified**

## *Caring for household objects and assisting others (d650-d669)*

**d 650 Caring for household objects**

Maintaining and repairing household and other personal objects, including house and contents, clothes, vehicles and assistive devices, and caring for plants and animals, such as painting or wallpapering rooms, fixing furniture, repairing plumbing, ensuring the proper working order of vehicles, watering plants, grooming and feeding pets and domestic animals.

*Inclusions: making and repairing clothes; maintaining dwelling, furnishings and domestic appliances; maintaining vehicles; maintaining assistive devices; taking care of plants (indoor and outdoor) and animals*

*Exclusions: acquiring a place to live (d610); acquisition of goods and services (d620); doing housework (d640); caring for others (d660); remunerative employment (d850)*

**d 6500 Making and repairing clothes**

Making and repairing clothes, such as by sewing, producing or mending clothes; reattaching buttons and fasteners; ironing clothes, fixing and polishing footwear.

*Exclusion: using household appliances (d6403)*

- d 6501 Maintaining dwelling and furnishings**  
Repairing and taking care of dwelling, its exterior, interior and contents, such as by painting, repairing fixtures and furniture, and using required tools for repair work.
- d 6502 Maintaining domestic appliances**  
Repairing and taking care of all domestic appliances for cooking, cleaning and repairing, such as by oiling and repairing tools and maintaining the washing machine.
- d 6503 Maintaining vehicles**  
Repairing and taking care of motorized and non-motorized vehicles for personal use, including bicycles, carts, automobiles and boats.
- d 6504 Maintaining assistive devices**  
Repairing and taking care of assistive devices, such as prostheses, orthoses and specialized tools and aids for housekeeping and personal care; maintaining and repairing aids for personal mobility such as canes, walkers, wheelchairs and scooters; and maintaining communication and recreational aids.
- d 6505 Taking care of plants, indoors and outdoors**  
Taking care of plants inside and outside the house, such as by planting, watering and fertilizing plants; gardening and growing foods for personal use.
- d 6506 Taking care of animals**  
Taking care of domestic animals and pets, such as by feeding, cleaning, grooming and exercising pets; watching over the health of animals or pets; planning for the care of animals or pets in one's absence.
- d 6508 Caring for household objects, specified**
- d 6509 Caring for household objects, unspecified**

**d 660 Assisting others**

Assisting household members and others with their learning, communicating, self-care, movement, within the house or outside; being concerned about the well-being of household members and others.

*Inclusions: assisting others with self-care, movement, communication, interpersonal relations, nutrition and health maintenance*

*Exclusion: remunerative employment (d850)*



- d 6600    Assisting others with self-care**  
Assisting household members and others in performing self-care, including helping others with eating, bathing and dressing; taking care of children or members of the household who are sick or have difficulties with basic self-care; helping others with their toileting.
- d 6601    Assisting others in movement**  
Assisting household members and others in movements and in moving outside the home, such as in the neighbourhood or city, to or from school, place of employment or other destination.
- d 6602    Assisting others in communication**  
Assisting household members and others with their communication, such as by helping with speaking, writing or reading.
- d 6603    Assisting others in interpersonal relations**  
Assisting household members and others with their interpersonal interactions, such as by helping them to initiate, maintain or terminate relationships.
- d 6604    Assisting others in nutrition**  
Assisting household members and others with their nutrition, such as by helping them to prepare and eat meals.
- d 6605    Assisting others in health maintenance**  
Assisting household members and others with formal and informal health care, such as by ensuring that a child gets regular medical check-ups, or that an elderly relative takes required medication.
- d 6608    Assisting others, other specified**
- d 6609    Assisting others, unspecified**
- d 669    Caring for household objects and assisting others, other specified and unspecified**
- d 698    Domestic life, other specified**
- d 699    Domestic life, unspecified**



## Chapter 7

# Interpersonal interactions and relationships

This chapter is about carrying out the actions and tasks required for basic and complex interactions with people (strangers, friends, relatives, family members and lovers) in a contextually and socially appropriate manner.

### *General interpersonal interactions (d710-d729)*

#### **d710 Basic interpersonal interactions**

Interacting with people in a contextually and socially appropriate manner, such as by showing consideration and esteem when appropriate, or responding to the feelings of others.

*Inclusions: showing respect, warmth, appreciation, and tolerance in relationships; responding to criticism and social cues in relationships; and using appropriate physical contact in relationships*

#### **d7100 Respect and warmth in relationships**

Showing and responding to consideration and esteem, in a contextually and socially appropriate manner.

#### **d7101 Appreciation in relationships**

Showing and responding to satisfaction and gratitude, in a contextually and socially appropriate manner.

#### **d7102 Tolerance in relationships**

Showing and responding to understanding and acceptance of behaviour, in a contextually and socially appropriate manner.

#### **d7103 Criticism in relationships**

Providing and responding to implicit and explicit differences of opinion or disagreement, in a contextually and socially appropriate manner.

#### **d7104 Social cues in relationships**

Giving and reacting appropriately to signs and hints that occur in social interactions.

#### **d7105 Physical contact in relationships**

Making and responding to bodily contact with others, in a contextually and socially appropriate manner.

**d7108 Basic interpersonal interactions, other specified**

**d7109 Basic interpersonal interactions, unspecified**

**d720 Complex interpersonal interactions**

Maintaining and managing interactions with other people, in a contextually and socially appropriate manner, such as by regulating emotions and impulses, controlling verbal and physical aggression, acting independently in social interactions, and acting in accordance with social rules and conventions.

*Inclusions: forming and terminating relationships; regulating behaviours within interactions; interacting according to social rules; and maintaining social space*

**d7200 Forming relationships**

Beginning and maintaining interactions with others for a short or long period of time, in a contextually and socially appropriate manner, such as by introducing oneself, finding and establishing friendships and professional relationships, starting a relationship that may become permanent, romantic or intimate.

**d7201 Terminating relationships**

Bringing interactions to a close in a contextually and socially appropriate manner, such as by ending temporary relationships at the end of a visit, ending long-term relationships with friends when moving to a new town or ending relationships with work colleagues, professional colleagues and service providers, and ending romantic or intimate relationships.

**d7202 Regulating behaviours within interactions**

Regulating emotions and impulses, verbal aggression and physical aggression in interactions with others, in a contextually and socially appropriate manner.

**d7203 Interacting according to social rules**

Acting independently in social interactions and complying with social conventions governing one's role, position or other social status in interactions with others.

**d7204 Maintaining social space**

Being aware of and maintaining a distance between oneself and others that is contextually, socially and culturally appropriate.

**d7208 Complex interpersonal interactions, other specified**

d7209 Complex interpersonal interactions, unspecified

**d729** General interpersonal interactions, other specified and unspecified

### *Particular interpersonal relationships (d730-d779)*

**d730** Relating with strangers

Engaging in temporary contacts and links with strangers for specific purposes, such as when asking for directions or making a purchase.

**d740** Formal relationships

Creating and maintaining specific relationships in formal settings, such as with employers, professionals or service providers.

*Inclusions: relating with persons in authority, with subordinates and with equals*

d7400 Relating with persons in authority

Creating and maintaining formal relations with people in positions of power or of a higher rank or prestige relative to one's own social position, such as an employer.

d7401 Relating with subordinates

Creating and maintaining formal relations with people in positions of lower rank or prestige relative to one's own social position, such as an employee or servant.

d7402 Relating with equals

Creating and maintaining formal relations with people in the same position of authority, rank or prestige relative to one's own social position.

d7408 Formal relationships, other specified

d7409 Formal relationships, other unspecified

**d750** Informal social relationships

Entering into relationships with others, such as casual relationships with people living in the same community or residence, or with co-workers, students, playmates or people with similar backgrounds or professions.

*Inclusions: informal relationships with friends, neighbours, acquaintances, co-inhabitants and peers*



**d7500 Informal relationships with friends**

Creating and maintaining friendship relationships that are characterized by mutual esteem and common interests.

**d7501 Informal relationships with neighbours**

Creating and maintaining informal relationships with people who live in nearby dwellings or living areas.

**d7502 Informal relationships with acquaintances**

Creating and maintaining informal relationships with people whom one knows but who are not close friends.

**d7503 Informal relationships with co-inhabitants**

Creating and maintaining informal relationships with people who are co-inhabitants of a house or other dwelling, privately or publicly run, for any purpose.

**d7504 Informal relationships with peers**

Creating and maintaining informal relationships with people who share the same age, interest or other common feature.

**d7508 Informal social relationships, other specified****d7509 Informal social relationships, unspecified****d760 Family relationships**

Creating and maintaining kinship relationships, such as with members of the nuclear family, extended family, foster and adopted family and step-relationships, more distant relationships such as second cousins, or legal guardians.

*Inclusions: parent-child and child-parent relationships, sibling and extended family relationships*

**d7600 Parent-child relationships**

Becoming and being a parent, both natural and adoptive, such as by having a child and relating to it as a parent or creating and maintaining a parental relationship with an adoptive child, and providing physical, intellectual and emotional nurture to one's natural or adoptive child.

**d7601 Child-parent relationships**

Creating and maintaining relationships with one's parent, such as a young child obeying his or her parents or an adult child taking care of his or her elderly parents.



**d 7602 Sibling relationships**

Creating and maintaining a brotherly or sisterly relationship with a person who shares one or both parents by birth, adoption or marriage.

**d 7603 Extended family relationships**

Creating and maintaining a family relationship with members of one's extended family, such as with cousins, aunts and uncles and grandparents.

**d 7608 Family relationships, other specified****d 7609 Family relationships, unspecified****d 770 Intimate relationships**

Creating and maintaining close or romantic relationships between individuals, such as husband and wife, lovers or sexual partners.

*Inclusions: romantic, spousal and sexual relationships*

**d 7700 Romantic relationships**

Creating and maintaining a relationship based on emotional and physical attraction, potentially leading to long-term intimate relationships.

**d 7701 Spousal relationships**

Creating and maintaining an intimate relationship of a legal nature with another person, such as in a legal marriage, including becoming and being a legally married wife or husband or an unmarried spouse.

**d 7702 Sexual relationships**

Creating and maintaining a relationship of a sexual nature, with a spouse or other partner.

**d 7708 Intimate relationships, other specified****d 7709 Intimate relationships, unspecified****d 779 Particular interpersonal relationships, other specified and unspecified****d 798 Interpersonal interactions and relationships, other specified****d 799 Interpersonal interactions and relationships, unspecified**

## Chapter 8

# Major life areas

This chapter is about carrying out the tasks and actions required to engage in education, work and employment and to conduct economic transactions.

### *Education (d810-d839)*

**d810** **Informal education**

Learning at home or in some other non-institutional setting, such as learning crafts and other skills from parents or family members, or home schooling.

**d815** **Preschool education**

Learning at an initial level of organized instruction, designed primarily to introduce a child to the school-type environment and prepare it for compulsory education, such as by acquiring skills in a day-care or similar setting as preparation for advancement to school.

**d820** **School education**

Gaining admission to school, Education, engaging in all school-related responsibilities and privileges, and learning the course material, subjects and other curriculum requirements in a primary or secondary education programme, including attending school regularly, working cooperatively with other students, taking direction from teachers, organizing, studying and completing assigned tasks and projects, and advancing to other stages of education.

**d825** **Vocational training**

Engaging in all activities of a vocational programme and learning the curriculum material in preparation for employment in a trade, job or profession.

**d830** **Higher education**

Engaging in the activities of advanced educational programmes in universities, colleges and professional schools and learning all aspects of the curriculum required for degrees, diplomas, certificates and other accreditations, such as completing a university bachelor's or master's course of study, medical school or other professional school.

**d839** **Education, other specified and unspecified**

## Work and employment (d840-d859)

### **d840** Apprenticeship (work preparation)

Engaging in programmes related to preparation for employment, such as performing the tasks required of an apprenticeship, internship, articling and in-service training.

*Exclusion: vocational training (d825)*

### **d845** Acquiring, keeping and terminating a job

Seeking, finding and choosing employment, being hired and accepting employment, maintaining and advancing through a job, trade, occupation or profession, and leaving a job in an appropriate manner.

*Inclusions: seeking employment; preparing a resume or curriculum vitae; contacting employers and preparing interviews; maintaining a job; monitoring one's own work performance; giving notice; and terminating a job*

#### **d8450** Seeking employment

Locating and choosing a job, in a trade, profession or other form of employment, and performing the required tasks to get hired, such as showing up at the place of employment or participating in a job interview.

#### **d8451** Maintaining a job

Performing job-related tasks to keep an occupation, trade, profession or other form of employment, and obtaining promotion and other advancements in employment.

#### **d8452** Terminating a job

Leaving or quitting a job in the appropriate manner.

#### **d8458** Acquiring, keeping and terminating a job, other specified

#### **d8459** Acquiring, keeping and terminating a job, unspecified

### **d850** Remunerative employment

Engaging in all aspects of work, as an occupation, trade, profession or other form of employment, for payment, as an employee, full or part time, or self-employed, such as seeking employment and getting a job, doing the required tasks of the job, attending work on time as required, supervising other workers or being supervised, and performing required tasks alone or in groups.

*Inclusions: self-employment, part-time and full-time employment*



**d 8500 Self-employment**

Engaging in remunerative work sought or generated by the individual, or contracted from others without a formal employment relationship, such as migratory agricultural work, working as a free-lance writer or consultant, short-term contract work, working as an artist or crafts person, owning and running a shop or other business.

*Exclusions: part-time and full-time employment (d8501, d8502)*

**d 8501 Part-time employment**

Engaging in all aspects of work for payment on a part-time basis, as an employee, such as seeking employment and getting a job, doing the tasks required of the job, attending work on time as required, supervising other workers or being supervised, and performing required tasks alone or in groups.

**d 8502 Full-time employment**

Engaging in all aspects of work for payment on a full-time basis, as an employee, such as seeking employment and getting a job, doing the required tasks of the job, attending work on time as required, supervising other workers or being supervised, and performing required tasks alone or in groups.

**d 8508 Remunerative employment, other specified****d 8509 Remunerative employment, unspecified****d 855 Non-remunerative employment**

Engaging in all aspects of work in which pay is not provided, full-time or part-time, including organized work activities, doing the required tasks of the job, attending work on time as required, supervising other workers or being supervised, and performing required tasks alone or in groups, such as volunteer work, charity work, working for a community or religious group without remuneration, working around the home without remuneration.

*Exclusion: Chapter 6 Domestic Life*

**d 859 Work and employment, other specified and unspecified****Economic life (d860-d879)****d 860 Basic economic transactions**

Engaging in any form of simple economic transaction, such as using money to purchase food or bartering, exchanging goods or services; or saving money.



**d 865**    **Complex economic transactions**

Engaging in any form of complex economic transaction that involves the exchange of capital or property, and the creation of profit or economic value, such as buying a business, factory, or equipment, maintaining a bank account, or trading in commodities.

**d 870**    **Economic self-sufficiency**

Having command over economic resources, from private or public sources, in order to ensure economic security for present and future needs.

*Inclusions: personal economic resources and public economic entitlements*

**d 8700**    **Personal economic resources**

Having command over personal or private economic resources, in order to ensure economic security for present and future needs.

**d 8701**    **Public economic entitlements**

Having command over public economic resources, in order to ensure economic security for present and future needs.

**d 8708**    **Economic self-sufficiency, other specified****d 8709**    **Economic self-sufficiency, unspecified****d 879**    **Economic life, other specified and unspecified****d 898**    **Major life areas, other specified****d 899**    **Major life areas, unspecified**

## Chapter 9

# Community, social and civic life

This chapter is about the actions and tasks required to engage in organized social life outside the family, in community, social and civic areas of life.

### **d910** Community life

Engaging in all aspects of community social life, such as engaging in charitable organizations, service clubs or professional social organizations.

*Inclusions: informal and formal associations; ceremonies*

*Exclusions: non-remunerative employment (d855); recreation and leisure (d920); religion and spirituality (d930); political life and citizenship (d950)*

#### **d9100** Informal associations

Engaging in social or community associations organized by people with common interests, such as local social clubs or ethnic groups.

#### **d9101** Formal associations

Engaging in professional or other exclusive social groups, such as associations of lawyers, physicians or academics.

#### **d9102** Ceremonies

Engaging in non-religious rites or social ceremonies, such as marriages, funerals or initiation ceremonies.

#### **d9108** Community life, other specified

#### **d9109** Community life, unspecified

### **d920** Recreation and leisure

Engaging in any form of play, recreational or leisure activity, such as informal or organized play and sports, programmes of physical fitness, relaxation, amusement or diversion, going to art galleries, museums, cinemas or theatres; engaging in crafts or hobbies, reading for enjoyment, playing musical instruments; sightseeing, tourism and travelling for pleasure.

*Inclusions: play, sports, arts and culture, crafts, hobbies and socializing*

*Exclusions: riding animals for transportation (d480); remunerative and non-remunerative work (d850 and d855); religion and spirituality (d930); political life and citizenship (d950)*

- d 9200 Play**  
Engaging in games with rules or unstructured or unorganized games and spontaneous recreation, such as playing chess or cards or children's play.
- d 9201 Sports**  
Engaging in competitive and informal or formally organized games or athletic events, performed alone or in a group, such as bowling, gymnastics or soccer.
- d 9202 Arts and culture**  
Engaging in, or appreciating, fine arts or cultural events, such as going to the theatre, cinema, museum or art gallery, or acting in a play, reading for enjoyment or playing a musical instrument.
- d 9203 Crafts**  
Engaging in handicrafts, such as pottery or knitting.
- d 9204 Hobbies**  
Engaging in pastimes such as collecting stamps, coins or antiques.
- d 9205 Socializing**  
Engaging in informal or casual gatherings with others, such as visiting friends or relatives or meeting informally in public places.
- d 9208 Recreation and leisure, other specified**
- d 9209 Recreation and leisure, unspecified**

**d 930****Religion and spirituality**

Engaging in religious or spiritual activities, organizations and practices for self-fulfilment, finding meaning, religious or spiritual value and establishing connection with a divine power, such as is involved in attending a church, temple, mosque or synagogue, praying or chanting for a religious purpose, and spiritual contemplation.

*Inclusions: organized religion and spirituality*

**d 9300 Organized religion**

Engaging in organized religious ceremonies, activities and events.

**d 9301 Spirituality**

Engaging in spiritual activities or events, outside an organized religion.

**d 9308 Religion and spirituality, other specified****d 9309 Religion and spirituality, unspecified****d 940 Human rights**

Enjoying all nationally and internationally recognized rights that are accorded to people by virtue of their humanity alone, such as human rights as recognized by the United Nations Universal Declaration of Human Rights (1948) and the United Nations Standard Rules for the Equalization of Opportunities for Persons with Disabilities (1993); the right to self-determination or autonomy; and the right to control over one's destiny.

*Exclusion: political life and citizenship (d950)*

**d 950 Political life and citizenship**

Engaging in the social, political and governmental life of a citizen, having legal status as a citizen and enjoying the rights, protections, privileges and duties associated with that role, such as the right to vote and run for political office, to form political associations; enjoying the rights and freedoms associated with citizenship (e.g. the rights of freedom of speech, association, religion, protection against unreasonable search and seizure, the right to counsel, to a trial and other legal rights and protection against discrimination); having legal standing as a citizen.

*Exclusion: human rights (d940)*

**d 998 Community, social and civic life, other specified****d 999 Community, social and civic life, unspecified**



# ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS

**Definition:** *Environmental factors make up the physical, social and attitudinal environment in which people live and conduct their lives.*

## *Coding environmental factors*

Environmental Factors is a component of Part 2 (Contextual factors) of the classification. These factors must be considered for each component of functioning and coded accordingly (see Annex 2).

Environmental factors are to be coded from the perspective of the person whose situation is being described. For example, kerb cuts without textured paving may be coded as a facilitator for a wheelchair user but as a barrier for a blind person.

The first qualifier indicates the extent to which a factor is a facilitator or a barrier. There are several reasons why an environmental factor may be a facilitator or a barrier, and to what extent. For facilitators, the coder should keep in mind issues such as the accessibility of a resource, and whether access is dependable or variable, of good or poor quality, and so on. In the case of barriers, it might be relevant how often a factor hinders the person, whether the hindrance is great or small, or avoidable or not. It should also be kept in mind that an environmental factor can be a barrier either because of its presence (for example, negative attitudes towards people with disabilities) or its absence (for example, the unavailability of a needed service). The effects that environmental factors have on the lives of people with health conditions are varied and complex, and it is hoped that future research will lead to better understanding of this interaction and, possibly, show the usefulness of a second qualifier for these factors.

In some instances, a diverse collection of environmental factors is summarized with a single term, such as poverty, development, rural or urban setting or social capital. These summary terms are not themselves found in the classification. Rather, the coder should separate the constituent factors and code these. Once again, further research is required to determine whether there are clear and consistent sets of environmental factors that make up each of these summary terms.

## *First qualifier*

The following is the negative and positive scale for the extent to which an environmental factor acts as a barrier or a facilitator. A point or separator alone denotes a barrier, and the + sign denotes a facilitator, as indicated below:

xxx.0 NO barrier	(none, absent, negligible,... )	0-4%
xxx.1 MILD barrier	(slight, low,...)	5-24%
xxx.2 MODERATE barrier	(medium, fair,...)	25-49%
xxx.3 SEVERE barrier	(high, extreme, ...)	50-95%
xxx.4 COMPLETE barrier	(total,...)	96-100%
xxx+0 NO facilitator	(none, absent, negligible,... )	0-4%
xxx+1 MILD facilitator	(slight, low,...)	5-24%
xxx+2 MODERATE facilitator	(medium, fair,...)	25-49%
xxx+3 SUBSTANTIAL facilitator	(high, extreme, ...)	50-95%
xxx+4 COMPLETE facilitator	(total,...)	96-100%
xxx.8 barrier, not specified		
xxx+8 facilitator, not specified		
xxx.9 not applicable		

Broad ranges of percentages are provided for those cases in which calibrated assessment instruments or other standards are available to quantify the extent of the barrier or facilitator in the environment. For example, when “no barrier” or a “complete barrier” is coded, this scaling has a margin of error of up to 5%. A “moderate barrier” is defined as up to half of the scale of a total barrier. The percentages are to be calibrated in different domains with reference to population standards as percentiles. For this quantification to be used in a uniform manner, assessment procedures have to be developed through research.

Second qualifier: To be developed.

## Chapter 1

# Products and technology

This chapter is about the natural or human-made products or systems of products, equipment and technology in an individual's immediate environment that are gathered, created, produced or manufactured. The ISO 9999 classification of technical aids defines these as "any product, instrument, equipment or technical system used by a disabled person, especially produced or generally available, preventing, compensating, monitoring, relieving or neutralizing" disability. It is recognized that any product or technology can be assistive. (See ISO 9999: Technical aids for disabled persons - Classification (second version); ISO/TC 173/SC 2; ISO/DIS 9999 (rev.).) For the purposes of this classification of environmental factors, however, assistive products and technology are defined more narrowly as any product, instrument, equipment or technology adapted or specially designed for improving the functioning of a disabled person.

### **e 110** Products or substances for personal consumption

Any natural or human-made object or substance gathered, processed or manufactured for ingestion.

*Inclusions: food and drugs*

#### **e 1100** Food

Any natural or human-made object or substance gathered, processed or manufactured to be eaten, such as raw, processed and prepared food and liquids of different consistencies, herbs and minerals (vitamin and other supplements).

#### **e 1101** Drugs

Any natural or human-made object or substance gathered, processed or manufactured for medicinal purposes, such as allopathic and naturopathic medication.

#### **e 1108** Products or substances for personal consumption, other specified

#### **e 1109** Products or substances for personal consumption, unspecified

### **e 115** Products and technology for personal use in daily living

Equipment, products and technologies used by people in daily activities, including those adapted or specially designed, located in, on or near the person using them.

*Inclusions: general and assistive products and technology for personal use*



- e 1150 General products and technology for personal use in daily living**  
Equipment, products and technologies used by people in daily activities, such as clothes, textiles, furniture, appliances, cleaning products and tools, not adapted or specially designed.
- e 1151 Assistive products and technology for personal use in daily living**  
Adapted or specially designed equipment, products and technologies that assist people in daily living, such as prosthetic and orthotic devices, neural prostheses (e.g. functional stimulation devices that control bowels, bladder, breathing and heart rate), and environmental control units aimed at facilitating individuals' control over their indoor setting (scanners, remote control systems, voice-controlled systems, timer switches).
- e 1158 Products and technology for personal use in daily living, other specified**
- e 1159 Products and technology for personal use in daily living, unspecified**

**e 120 Products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation**

Equipment, products and technologies used by people in activities of moving inside and outside buildings, including those adapted or specially designed, located in, on or near the person using them.

*Inclusions: general and assistive products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation*

- e 1200 General products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation**  
Equipment, products and technologies used by people in activities of moving inside and outside buildings, such as motorized and non-motorized vehicles used for the transportation of people over ground, water and air (e.g. buses, cars, vans, other motor-powered vehicles and animal-powered transporters), not adapted or specially designed.
- e 1201 Assistive products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation**  
Adapted or specially designed equipment, products and technologies that assist people to move inside and outside buildings, such as walking devices, special cars and vans, adaptations to vehicles, wheelchairs, scooters and transfer devices.



**e 1208** Products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation, other specified

**e 1209** Products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation, unspecified

**e 125** **Products and technology for communication**

Equipment, products and technologies used by people in activities of sending and receiving information, including those adapted or specially designed, located in, on or near the person using them.

*Inclusions: general and assistive products and technology for communication*

**e 1250** **General products and technology for communication**  
Equipment, products and technologies used by people in activities of sending and receiving information, such as optical and auditory devices, audio recorders and receivers, television and video equipment, telephone devices, sound transmission systems and face-to-face communication devices, not adapted or specially designed.

**e 1251** **Assistive products and technology for communication**  
Adapted or specially designed equipment, products and technologies that assist people to send and receive information, such as specialized vision devices, electro-optical devices, specialized writing devices, drawing or handwriting devices, signalling systems and special computer software and hardware, cochlear implants, hearing aids, FM auditory trainers, voice prostheses, communication boards, glasses and contact lenses.

**e 1258** **Products and technology for communication, other specified**

**e 1259** **Products and technology for communication, unspecified**

**e 130** **Products and technology for education**

Equipment, products, processes, methods and technology used for acquisition of knowledge, expertise or skill, including those adapted or specially designed.

*Inclusions: general and assistive products and technology for education*

- e 1300 General products and technology for education**  
Equipment, products, processes, methods and technology used for acquisition of knowledge, expertise or skill at any level, such as books, manuals, educational toys, computer hardware or software, not adapted or specially designed.
- e 1301 Assistive products and technology for education**  
Adapted and specially designed equipment, products, processes, methods and technology used for acquisition of knowledge, expertise or skill, such as specialized computer technology.
- e 1308 Products and technology for education, other specified**
- e 1309 Products and technology for education, unspecified**

**e 135 Products and technology for employment**

Equipment, products and technology used for employment to facilitate work activities.

*Inclusions: general and assistive products and technology for employment*

- e 1350 General products and technology for employment**  
Equipment, products and technology used for employment to facilitate work activities, such as tools, machines and office equipment, not adapted or specially designed.
- e 1351 Assistive products and technology for employment**  
Adapted or specially designed equipment, products and technology used for employment to facilitate work activities, such as adjustable tables, desks and filing cabinets; remote control entry and exit of office doors; computer hardware, software, accessories and environmental control units aimed at facilitating an individual's conduct of work-related tasks and aimed at control of the work environment (e.g. scanners, remote control systems, voice-controlled systems and timer switches).
- e 1358 Products and technology for employment, other specified**
- e 1359 Products and technology for employment, unspecified**

**e 140****Products and technology for culture, recreation and sport**

Equipment, products and technology used for the conduct and enhancement of cultural, recreational and sporting activities, including those adapted or specially designed.

*Inclusions: general and assistive products and technology for culture, recreation and sport*

**e 1400 General products and technology for culture, recreation and sport**

Equipment, products and technology used for the conduct and enhancement of cultural, recreational and sporting activities, such as toys, skis, tennis balls and musical instruments, not adapted or specially designed.

**e 1401 Assistive products and technology for culture, recreation and sport**

Adapted or specially designed equipment, products and technology used for the conduct and enhancement of cultural, recreational and sporting activities, such as modified mobility devices for sports, adaptations for musical and other artistic performance.

**e 1408 Products and technology for culture, recreation and sport, other specified****e 1409 Products and technology for culture, recreation and sport, unspecified****e 145****Products and technology for the practice of religion and spirituality**

Products and technology, unique or mass-produced, that are given or take on a symbolic meaning in the context of the practice of religion or spirituality, including those adapted or specially designed.

*Inclusions: general and assistive products and technology for the practice of religion and spirituality*

**e 1450 General products and technology for the practice of religion or spirituality**

Products and technology, unique or mass-produced, that are given or take on a symbolic meaning in the context of the practice of religion or spirituality, such as spirit houses, maypoles, headdresses, masks, crucifixes, menorahs and prayer mats, not adapted or specially designed.



- e 1451 **Assistive products and technology for the practice of religion or spirituality**  
Adapted or specially designed products and technology that are given, or take on a symbolic meaning in the context of the practice of religion or spirituality, such as Braille religious books, Braille tarot cards, and special protection for wheelchair wheels when entering temples.
- e 1458 **Products and technology for the practice of religion or spirituality, other specified**
- e 1459 **Products and technology for the practice of religion or spirituality, unspecified**

**e 150 Design, construction and building products and technology of buildings for public use**

Products and technology that constitute an individual's indoor and outdoor human-made environment that is planned, designed and constructed for public use, including those adapted or specially designed.

*Inclusions: design, construction and building products and technology of entrances and exits, facilities and routing*

- e 1500 **Design, construction and building products and technology for entering and exiting buildings for public use**  
Products and technology of entry and exit from the human-made environment that is planned, designed and constructed for public use, such as design, building and construction of entries and exits to buildings for public use (e.g. workplaces, shops and theatres), public buildings, portable and stationary ramps, power-assisted doors, lever door handles and level door thresholds.
- e 1501 **Design, construction and building products and technology for gaining access to facilities inside buildings for public use**  
Products and technology of indoor facilities in design, building and construction for public use, such as washroom facilities, telephones, audio loops, lifts or elevators, escalators, thermostats (for temperature regulation) and dispersed accessible seating in auditoriums or stadiums.



- e 1502 **Design, construction and building products and technology for way finding, path routing and designation of locations in buildings for public use<sup>7</sup>**  
Indoor and outdoor products and technology in design, building and construction for public use to assist people to find their way inside and immediately outside buildings and locate the places they want to go to, such as signage, in Braille or writing, size of corridors, floor surfaces, accessible kiosks and other forms of directories.
- e 1508 **Design, construction and building products and technology of buildings for public use, other specified**
- e 1509 **Design, construction and building products and technology of buildings for public use, unspecified**

**e 155** **Design, construction and building products and technology of buildings for private use**

Products and technology that constitute an individual's indoor and outdoor human-made environment that is planned, designed and constructed for private use, including those adapted or specially designed.

*Inclusions: design, construction and building products and technology of entrances and exits, facilities and routing*

- e 1550 **Design, construction and building products and technology for entering and exiting of buildings for private use**  
Products and technology of entry and exit from the human-made environment that is planned, designed and constructed for private use, such as entries and exits to private homes, portable and stationary ramps, power-assisted doors, lever door handles and level door thresholds.
- e 1551 **Design, construction and building products and technology for gaining access to facilities in buildings for private use**  
Products and technology related to design, building and construction inside buildings for private use, such as washroom facilities, telephones, audio loops, kitchen cabinets, appliances and electronic controls in private homes.

- e 1552 **Design, construction and building products and technology for way finding, path routing and designation of locations in buildings for private use**  
Indoor and outdoor products and technology in the design, building and construction of path routing, for private use, to assist people to find their way inside and immediately outside buildings and locate the places they want to go to, such as signage, in Braille or writing, size of corridors and floor surfaces.
- e 1558 **Design, construction and building products and technology of buildings for private use, other specified**
- e 1559 **Design, construction and building products and technology of buildings for private use, unspecified**

**e 160 Products and technology of land development**

Products and technology of land areas, as they affect an individual's outdoor environment through the implementation of land use policies, design, planning and development of space, including those adapted or specially designed.

*Inclusions: products and technology of land areas that have been organized by the implementation of land use policies, such as rural areas, suburban areas, urban areas, parks, conservation areas and wildlife reserves*

- e 1600 **Products and technology of rural land development**  
Products and technology in rural land areas, as they affect an individual's outdoor environment through the implementation of rural land use policies, design, planning and development of space, such as farm lands, pathways and signposting.
- e 1601 **Products and technology of suburban land development**  
Products and technology in suburban land areas, as they affect an individual's outdoor environment through the implementation of suburban land use policies, design, planning and development of space, such as kerb cuts, pathways, signposting and street lighting.
- e 1602 **Products and technology of urban land development**  
Products and technology in urban land areas as they affect an individual's outdoor environment through the implementation of urban land use policies, design, planning and development of space, such as kerb cuts, ramps, signposting and street lighting.

**e 1603**    **Products and technology of parks, conservation and wildlife areas**

Products and technology in land areas making up parks, conservation and wildlife areas, as they affect an individual's outdoor environment through the implementation of land use policies and design, planning and development of space, such as park signage and wildlife trails.

**e 1608**    **Products and technology of land development, other specified**

**e 1609**    **Products and technology of land development, unspecified**

**e 165**    **Assets**

Products or objects of economic exchange such as money, goods, property and other valuables that an individual owns or of which he or she has rights of use.

*Inclusions: tangible and intangible products and goods, financial assets*

**e 1650**    **Financial assets**

Products, such as money and other financial instruments, which serve as a medium of exchange for labour, capital goods and services.

**e 1651**    **Tangible assets**

Products or objects, such as houses and land, clothing, food and technical goods, which serve as a medium of exchange for labour, capital goods and services.

**e 1652**    **Intangible assets**

Products, such as intellectual property, knowledge and skills, which serve as a medium of exchange for labour, capital goods and services.

**e 1658**    **Assets, other specified**

**e 1659**    **Assets, unspecified**

**e 198**    **Products and technology, other specified**

**e 199**    **Products and technology, unspecified**



## Chapter 2

# Natural environment and human-made changes to environment

This chapter is about animate and inanimate elements of the natural or physical environment, and components of that environment that have been modified by people, as well as characteristics of human populations within that environment.

### **e210** Physical geography

Features of land forms and bodies of water.

*Inclusions: features of geography included within orography (relief, quality and expanse of land and land forms, including altitude) and hydrography (bodies of water such as lakes, rivers, sea)*

#### **e2100** Land forms

Features of land forms, such as mountains, hills, valleys and plains.

#### **e2101** Bodies of water

Features of bodies of water, such as lakes, dams, rivers and streams.

#### **e2108** Physical geography, other specified

#### **e2109** Physical geography, unspecified

### **e215** Population

Groups of people living in a given environment who share the same pattern of environmental adaptation.

*Inclusions: demographic change; population density*

#### **e2150** Demographic change

Changes occurring within groups of people, such as the composition and variation in the total number of individuals in an area caused by birth, death, ageing of a population and migration.

#### **e2151** Population density

Number of people per unit of land area, including features such as high and low density.

#### **e2158** Population, other specified

#### **e2159** Population, unspecified



**e 220**    **Flora and fauna**  
Plants and animals.

*Exclusions: domesticated animals (e350); population (e215)*

**e 2200**    **Plants**

Any of various photosynthetic, eukaryotic, multicellular organisms of the kingdom Plantae characteristically producing embryos, containing chloroplasts, having cellulose cell walls, and lacking the power of locomotion, such as trees, flowers, shrubs and vines.

**e 2201**    **Animals**

Multicellular organisms of the kingdom Animalia, differing from plants in certain typical characteristics such as capacity for locomotion, non-photosynthetic metabolism, pronounced response to stimuli, restricted growth, and fixed bodily structure, such as wild or farm animals, reptiles, birds, fish and mammals.

*Exclusions: assets (e165); domesticated animals (e350)*

**e 2208**    **Fauna and flora, other specified**

**e 2209**    **Fauna and flora, unspecified**

**e 225**    **Climate**

Meteorological features and events, such as the weather.

*Inclusions: temperature, humidity, atmospheric pressure, precipitation, wind and seasonal variations*

**e 2250**    **Temperature**

Degree of heat or cold, such as high and low temperature, normal or extreme temperature.

**e 2251**    **Humidity**

Level of moisture in the air, such as high or low humidity.

**e 2252**    **Atmospheric pressure**

Pressure of the surrounding air, such as pressure related to height above sea level or meteorological conditions.

**e 2253**    **Precipitation**

Falling of moisture, such as rain, dew, snow, sleet and hail.

**e 2254 Wind**

Air in more or less rapid natural motion, such as a breeze, gale or gust.

**e 2255 Seasonal variation**

Natural, regular and predictable changes from one season to the next, such as summer, autumn, winter and spring.

**e 2258 Climate, other specified****e 2259 Climate, unspecified****e 230 Natural events**

Geographic and atmospheric changes that cause disruption in an individual's physical environment, occurring regularly or irregularly, such as earthquakes and severe or violent weather conditions, e.g. tornadoes, hurricanes, typhoons, floods, forest fires and ice-storms.

**e 235 Human-caused events**

Alterations or disturbances in the natural environment, caused by humans, that may result in the disruption of people's day-to-day lives, including events or conditions linked to conflict and wars, such as the displacement of people, destruction of social infrastructure, homes and lands, environmental disasters and land, water or air pollution (e.g. toxic spills).

**e 240 Light**

Electromagnetic radiation by which things are made visible by either sunlight or artificial lighting (e.g. candles, oil or paraffin lamps, fires and electricity), and which may provide useful or distracting information about the world.

*Inclusions: light intensity; light quality; colour contrasts*

**e 2400 Light intensity**

Level or amount of energy being emitted by either a natural (e.g. sun) or an artificial source of light.

**e 2401 Light quality**

The nature of the light being provided and related colour contrasts created in the visual surroundings, and which may provide useful information about the world (e.g. visual information on the presence of stairs or a door) or distractions (e.g. too many visual images).

**e 2408 Light, other specified**

e 2409 Light, unspecified

**e 245**

**Time-related changes**

Natural, regular or predictable temporal change.

*Inclusions: day/night and lunar cycles*

e 2450 Day/night cycles

Natural, regular and predictable changes from day through to night and back to day, such as day, night, dawn and dusk.

e 2451 Lunar cycles

Natural, regular and predictable changes of the moon's position in relation to the earth.

e 2458 Time-related changes, other specified

e 2459 Time-related changes, unspecified

**e 250**

**Sound**

A phenomenon that is or may be heard, such as banging, ringing, thumping, singing, whistling, yelling or buzzing, in any volume, timbre or tone, and that may provide useful or distracting information about the world.

*Inclusions: sound intensity; sound quality*

e 2500 Sound intensity

Level or volume of auditory phenomenon determined by the amount of energy being generated, where high energy levels are perceived as loud sounds and low energy levels as soft sounds.

e 2501 Sound quality

Nature of a sound as determined by the wavelength and wave pattern of the sound and perceived as the timbre and tone, such as harshness or melodiousness, and which may provide useful information about the world (e.g. sound of dog barking versus a cat miaowing) or distractions (e.g. background noise).

e 2508 Sound, other specified

e 2509 Sound, unspecified

**e 255**    **Vibration**

Regular or irregular to and fro motion of an object or an individual caused by a physical disturbance, such as shaking, quivering, quick jerky movements of things, buildings or people caused by small or large equipment, aircraft and explosions.

*Exclusion: natural events (e230), such as vibration or shaking of the earth caused by earthquakes*

**e 260**    **Air quality**

Characteristics of the atmosphere (outside buildings) or enclosed areas of air (inside buildings), and which may provide useful or distracting information about the world.

*Inclusions: indoor and outdoor air quality*

**e 2600**    **Indoor air quality**

Nature of the air inside buildings or enclosed areas, as determined by odour, smoke, humidity, air conditioning (controlled air quality) or uncontrolled air quality, and which may provide useful information about the world (e.g. smell of leaking gas) or distractions (e.g. overpowering smell of perfume).

**e 2601**    **Outdoor air quality**

Nature of the air outside buildings or enclosed areas, as determined by odour, smoke, humidity, ozone levels, and other features of the atmosphere, and which may provide useful information about the world (e.g. smell of rain) or distractions (e.g. toxic smells).

**e 2608**    **Air quality, other specified****e 2609**    **Air quality, unspecified****e 298**    **Natural environment and human-made changes to environment, other specified****e 299**    **Natural environment and human-made changes to environment, unspecified**



## Chapter 3

# Support and relationships

This chapter is about people or animals that provide practical physical or emotional support, nurturing, protection, assistance and relationships to other persons, in their home, place of work, school or at play or in other aspects of their daily activities. The chapter does not encompass the attitudes of the person or people that are providing the support. The environmental factor being described is not the person or animal, but the amount of physical and emotional support the person or animal provides.

### **e310** Immediate family

Individuals related by birth, marriage or other relationship recognized by the culture as immediate family, such as spouses, partners, parents, siblings, children, foster parents, adoptive parents and grandparents.

*Exclusions: extended family (e315); personal care providers and personal assistants (e340)*

### **e315** Extended family

Individuals related through family or marriage or other relationships recognized by the culture as extended family, such as aunts, uncles, nephews and nieces.

*Exclusion: immediate family (e310)*

### **e320** Friends

Individuals who are close and ongoing participants in relationships characterized by trust and mutual support.

### **e325** Acquaintances, peers, colleagues, neighbours and community members

Individuals who are familiar to each other as acquaintances, peers, colleagues, neighbours, and community members, in situations of work, school, recreation, or other aspects of life, and who share demographic features such as age, gender, religious creed or ethnicity or pursue common interests.

*Exclusions: associations and organizational services (e5550)*

### **e330** People in positions of authority

Individuals who have decision-making responsibilities for others and who have socially defined influence or power based on their social, economic, cultural or religious roles in society, such as teachers, employers, supervisors, religious leaders, substitute decision-makers, guardians or trustees.

**e 335**    **People in subordinate positions**

Individuals whose day-to-day life is influenced by people in positions of authority in work, school or other settings, such as students, workers and members of a religious group.

*Exclusion: immediate family (e310)*

**e 340**    **Personal care providers and personal assistants**

Individuals who provide services as required to support individuals in their daily activities and maintenance of performance at work, education or other life situation, provided either through public or private funds, or else on a voluntary basis, such as providers of support for home-making and maintenance, personal assistants, transport assistants, paid help, nannies and others who function as primary caregivers.

*Exclusions: immediate family (e310); extended family (e315); friends (e320); general social support services (e5750); health professionals (e355)*

**e 345**    **Strangers**

Individuals who are unfamiliar and unrelated, or those who have not yet established a relationship or association, including persons unknown to the individual but who are sharing a life situation with them, such as substitute teachers co-workers or care providers.

**e 350**    **Domesticated animals**

Animals that provide physical, emotional, or psychological support, such as pets (dogs, cats, birds, fish, etc.) and animals for personal mobility and transportation.

*Exclusions: animals (e2201); assets (e165)*

**e 355**    **Health professionals**

All service providers working within the context of the health system, such as doctors, nurses, physiotherapists, occupational therapists, speech therapists, audiologists, orthotist-prosthetists, medical social workers.

*Exclusion: other professionals (e360)*

**e 360**    **Other professionals**

All service providers working outside the health system, including social workers, lawyers, teachers, architects, and designers.

*Exclusion: health professionals (e355)*

**e 398**    **Support and relationships, other specified**

**e 399** Support and relationships, unspecified

7

## Chapter 4

# Attitudes

This chapter is about the attitudes that are the observable consequences of customs, practices, ideologies, values, norms, factual beliefs and religious beliefs. These attitudes influence individual behaviour and social life at all levels, from interpersonal relationships and community associations to political, economic and legal structures; for example, individual or societal attitudes about a person's trustworthiness and value as a human being may motivate positive, honorific practices or negative and discriminatory practices (e.g. stigmatizing, stereotyping and marginalizing or neglect of the person). The attitudes classified are those of people external to the person whose situation is being described. They are not those of the person themselves. The individual attitudes are categorized according to the kinds of relationships listed in Environmental Factors Chapter 3. Values and beliefs are not coded separately from attitudes as they are assumed to be the driving forces behind the attitudes.

**e410 Individual attitudes of immediate family members**

General or specific opinions and beliefs of immediate family members about the person or about other matters (e.g. social, political and economic issues), that influence individual behaviour and actions.

**e415 Individual attitudes of extended family members**

General or specific opinions and beliefs of extended family members about the person or about other matters (e.g. social, political and economic issues), that influence individual behaviour and actions.

**e420 Individual attitudes of friends**

General or specific opinions and beliefs of friends about the person or about other matters (e.g. social, political and economic issues), that influence individual behaviour and actions.

**e425 Individual attitudes of acquaintances, peers, colleagues, neighbours and community members**

General or specific opinions and beliefs of acquaintances, peers, colleagues, neighbours and community members about the person or about other matters (e.g. social, political and economic issues), that influence individual behaviour and actions.

**e430 Individual attitudes of people in positions of authority**

General or specific opinions and beliefs of people in positions of authority about the person or about other matters (e.g. social, political and economic issues), that influence individual behaviour and actions.



- e435 Individual attitudes of people in subordinate positions**  
General or specific opinions and beliefs of people in subordinate positions about the person or about other matters (e.g. social, political and economic issues), that influence individual behaviour and actions.
- e440 Individual attitudes of personal care providers and personal assistants**  
General or specific opinions and beliefs of personal care providers and personal assistants about the person or about other matters (e.g. social, political and economic issues), that influence individual behaviour and actions.
- e445 Individual attitudes of strangers**  
General or specific opinions and beliefs of strangers about the person or about other matters (e.g. social, political and economic issues), that influence individual behaviour and actions.
- e450 Individual attitudes of health professionals**  
General or specific opinions and beliefs of health professionals about the person or about other matters (e.g. social, political and economic issues), that influence individual behaviour and actions.
- e455 Individual attitudes of other professionals**  
General or specific opinions and beliefs of health-related and other professionals about the person or about other matters (e.g. social, political and economic issues), that influence individual behaviour and actions.
- e460 Societal attitudes**  
General or specific opinions and beliefs generally held by people of a culture, society, subcultural or other social group about other individuals or about other social, political and economic issues, that influence group or individual behaviour and actions.
- e465 Social norms, practices and ideologies**  
Customs, practices, rules and abstract systems of values and normative beliefs (e.g. ideologies, normative world views and moral philosophies) that arise within social contexts and that affect or create societal and individual practices and behaviours, such as social norms of moral and religious behaviour or etiquette; religious doctrine and resulting norms and practices; norms governing rituals or social gatherings.
- e498 Attitudes, other specified**
- e499 Attitudes, unspecified**

## Chapter 5

# Services, systems and policies

This chapter is about:

1. *Services* that provide benefits, structured programmes and operations, in various sectors of society, designed to meet the needs of individuals. (Included in services are the people who provide them.) Services may be public, private or voluntary, and may be established at a local, community, regional, state, provincial, national or international level by individuals, associations, organizations, agencies or governments. The goods provided by these services may be general or adapted and specially designed.

2. *Systems* that are administrative control and organizational mechanisms, and are established by governments at the local, regional, national, and international levels, or by other recognized authorities. These systems are designed to organize, control and monitor services that provide benefits, structured programmes and operations in various sectors of society.

3. *Policies* constituted by rules, regulations, conventions and standards established by governments at the local, regional, national, and international levels, or by other recognized authorities. Policies govern and regulate the systems that organize, control and monitor services, structured programmes and operations in various sectors of society.

**e510** **Services, systems and policies for the production of consumer goods**  
Services, systems and policies that govern and provide for the production of objects and products consumed or used by people.

**e5100** **Services for the production of consumer goods**  
Services and programmes for the collection, creation, production and manufacturing of consumer goods and products, such as for products and technology used for mobility, communication, education, transportation, employment and housework, including those who provide these services.

*Exclusions: education and training services (e5850); communication services (e5350); Chapter 1*

**e5101** **Systems for the production of consumer goods**  
Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms, such as regional, national or international organizations that set standards (e.g. International Organization for Standardization) and consumer bodies, that govern the collection, creation, production and manufacturing of consumer goods and products.

- e5102 **Policies for the production of consumer goods**  
Legislation, regulations and standards for the collection, creation, production and manufacturing of consumer goods and products, such as which standards to adopt.
- e5108 **Services, systems and policies for the production of consumer goods, other specified**
- e5109 **Services, systems and policies for the production of consumer goods, unspecified**

**e515****Architecture and construction services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies for the design and construction of buildings, public and private.

*Exclusion: open space planning services, systems and policies (e520)*

- e5150 **Architecture and construction services**  
Services and programmes for design, construction and maintenance of residential, commercial, industrial and public buildings, such as house-building, the operationalization of design principles, building codes, regulations and standards, including those who provide these services.
- e5151 **Architecture and construction systems**  
Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the planning, design, construction and maintenance of residential, commercial, industrial and public buildings, such as for implementing and monitoring building codes, construction standards, and fire and life safety standards.
- e5152 **Architecture and construction policies**  
Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the planning, design, construction and maintenance of residential, commercial, industrial and public buildings, such as policies on building codes, construction standards, and fire and life safety standards.
- e5158 **Architecture and construction services, systems and policies, other specified**
- e5159 **Architecture and construction services, systems and policies, unspecified**



**e 520**    **Open space planning services, systems and policies**  
Services, systems and policies for the planning, design, development and maintenance of public lands, (e.g. parks, forests, shorelines, wetlands) and private lands in the rural, suburban and urban context.

*Exclusion: architecture and construction services, systems and policies (e515)*

**e 5200**    **Open space planning services**  
Services and programmes aimed at planning, creating and maintaining urban, suburban, rural, recreational, conservation and environmental space, meeting and commercial open spaces (plazas, open-air markets) and pedestrian and vehicular transportation routes for intended uses, including those who provide these services.

*Exclusions: products for design, building and construction for public (e150) and private (e155) use; products of land development (e160)*

**e 5201**    **Open space planning systems**  
Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms, such as for the implementation of local, regional or national planning acts, design codes, heritage or conservation policies and environmental planning policy, that govern the planning, design, development and maintenance of open space, including rural, suburban and urban land, parks, conservation areas and wildlife reserves.

**e 5202**    **Open space planning policies**  
Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the planning, design, development and maintenance of open space, including rural land, suburban land, urban land, parks, conservation areas and wildlife reserves, such as local, regional or national planning acts, design codes, heritage or conservation policies, and environmental planning policies.

**e 5208**    **Open space planning services, systems and policies, other specified**

**e 5209**    **Open space planning services, systems and policies, unspecified**

**e 525**    **Housing services, systems and policies**  
Services, systems and policies for the provision of shelters, dwellings or lodging for people.



**e 5250 Housing services**

Services and programmes aimed at locating, providing and maintaining houses or shelters for persons to live in, such as estate agencies, housing organizations, shelters for homeless people, including those who provide these services.

**e 5251 Housing systems**

Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern housing or sheltering of people, such as systems for implementing and monitoring housing policies.

**e 5252 Housing policies**

Legislation, regulations and standards that govern housing or sheltering of people, such as legislation and policies for determination of eligibility for housing or shelter, policies concerning government involvement in developing and maintaining housing, and policies concerning how and where housing is developed.

**e 5258 Housing services, systems and policies, other specified****e 5259 Housing services, systems and policies, unspecified****e 530 Utilities services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies for publicly provided utilities, such as water, fuel, electricity, sanitation, public transportation and essential services.

*Exclusion: civil protection services, systems and policies (e545)*

**e 5300 Utilities services**

Services and programmes supplying the population as a whole with essential energy (e.g. fuel and electricity), sanitation, water and other essential services (e.g. emergency repair services) for residential and commercial consumers, including those who provide these services.

**e 5301 Utilities systems**

Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the provision of utilities services, such as health and safety boards and consumer councils.

**e 5302 Utilities policies**

Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the provision of utilities services, such as health and safety standards governing delivery and supply of water and fuel, sanitation practices in communities, and policies for other essential services and supply during shortages or natural disasters.

**e 5308 Utilities services, systems and policies, other specified****e 5309 Utilities services, systems and policies, unspecified****e 535 Communication services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies for the transmission and exchange of information.

**e 5350 Communication services**

Services and programmes aimed at transmitting information by a variety of methods such as telephone, fax, surface and air mail, electronic mail and other computer-based systems (e.g. telephone relay, teletype, teletext, and internet services), including those who provide these services.

*Exclusion: media services (e5600)*

**e 5351 Communication systems**

Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms, such as telecommunication regulation authorities and other such bodies, that govern the transmission of information by a variety of methods, including telephone, fax, surface and air mail, electronic mail and computer-based systems.

**e 5352 Communication policies**

Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the transmission of information by a variety of methods including telephone, fax, post office, electronic mail and computer-based systems, such as eligibility for access to communication services, requirements for a postal address, and standards for provision of telecommunications.

**e 5358 Communication services, systems and policies, other specified****e 5359 Communication services, systems and policies, unspecified****e 540 Transportation services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies for enabling people or goods to move or be moved from one location to another.

**e 5400 Transportation services**

Services and programmes aimed at moving persons or goods by road, paths, rail, air or water, by public or private transport, including those who provide these services.

*Exclusion: products for personal mobility and transportation (e115)*

**e 5401 Transportation systems**

Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the moving of persons or goods by road, paths, rail, air or water, such as systems for determining eligibility for operating vehicles and, implementation and monitoring of health and safety standards related to use of different types of transportation.

*Exclusion: social security services, systems and policies (e570)*

**e 5402 Transportation policies**

Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the moving of persons or goods by road, paths, rail, air or water, such as transportation planning acts and policies, policies for the provision and access to public transportation.

**e 5408 Transportation services, systems and policies, other specified****e 5409 Transportation services, systems and policies, unspecified****e 545 Civil protection services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies aimed at safeguarding people and property.

*Exclusion: utilities services, systems and policies (e530)*

**e 5450 Civil protection services**

Services and programmes organized by the community and aimed at safeguarding people and property, such as fire, police, emergency and ambulance services, including those who provide these services.

**e 5451 Civil protection systems**

Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the safeguarding of people and property, such as systems by which provision of police, fire, emergency and ambulance services are organized.



**e 5452 Civil protection policies**  
Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the safeguarding of people and property, such as policies governing provision of police, fire, emergency and ambulance services.

**e 5458 Civil protection services, systems and policies, other specified**

**e 5459 Civil protection services, systems and policies, unspecified**

**e 550 Legal services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies concerning the legislation and other law of a country.

**e 5500 Legal services**  
Services and programmes aimed at providing the authority of the state as defined in law, such as courts, tribunals and other agencies for hearing and settling civil litigation and criminal trials, attorney representation, services of notaries, mediation, arbitration and correctional or penal facilities, including those who provide these services.

**e 5501 Legal systems**  
Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the administration of justice, such as systems for implementing and monitoring formal rules (e.g. laws, regulations, customary law, religious law, international laws and conventions).

**e 5502 Legal policies**  
Legislation, regulations and standards, such as laws, customary law, religious law, international laws and conventions, that govern the administration of justice.

**e 5508 Legal services, systems and policies, other specified**

**e 5509 Legal services, systems and policies, unspecified**

**e 555 Associations and organizational services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies relating to groups of people who have joined together in the pursuit of common, noncommercial interests, often with an associated membership structure.



- e 5550 Associations and organizational services**  
Services and programmes provided by people who have joined together in the pursuit of common, noncommercial interests with people who have the same interests, where the provision of such services may be tied to membership, such as associations and organizations providing recreation and leisure, sporting, cultural, religious and mutual aid services.
- e 5551 Associations and organizational systems**  
Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the relationships and activities of people coming together with common noncommercial interests and the establishment and conduct of associations and organizations such as mutual aid organizations, recreational and leisure organizations, cultural and religious associations and not-for-profit organizations.
- e 5552 Associations and organizational policies**  
Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the relationships and activities of people coming together with common noncommercial interests, such as policies that govern the establishment and conduct of associations and organizations, including mutual aid organizations, recreational and leisure organizations, cultural and religious associations and not-for-profit organizations.
- e 5558 Associations and organizational services, systems and policies, other specified**
- e 5559 Associations and organizational services, systems and policies, unspecified**

**e 560 Media services, systems and policies**  
Services, systems and policies for the provision of mass communication through radio, television, newspapers and internet.

- e 5600 Media services**  
Services and programmes aimed at providing mass communication, such as radio, television, closed captioning services, press reporting services, newspapers, Braille services and computer-based mass communication (world wide web, internet), including those who provide these services.

*Exclusion: communication services (e5350)*

**e 5601 Media systems**

Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the provision of news and information to the general public, such as standards that govern the content, distribution, dissemination, access to and methods of communicating via radio, television, press reporting services, newspapers and computer-based mass communication (world wide web, internet).

*Inclusions: requirements to provide closed captions on television, Braille versions of newspapers or other publications, and teletext radio transmissions*

*Exclusion: communication systems (e5351)*

**e 5602 Media policies**

Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the provision of news and information to the general public, such as policies that govern the content, distribution, dissemination, access to and methods of communicating via radio, television, press reporting services, newspapers and computer-based mass communication (world wide web, internet).

*Exclusion: communication policies (e5352)*

**e 5608 Media services, systems and policies, other specified****e 5609 Media services, systems and policies, unspecified****e 565 Economic services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies related to the overall system of production, distribution, consumption and use of goods and services.

*Exclusion: social security services, systems and policies (e570)*

**e 5650 Economic services**

Services and programmes aimed at the overall production, distribution, consumption and use of goods and services, such as the private commercial sector (e.g. businesses, corporations, private for-profit ventures), the public sector (e.g. public, commercial services such as cooperatives and corporations), financial organizations (e.g. banks and insurance services), including those who provide these services.

*Exclusions: utilities services (e5300 ); labour and employment services (e5900)*

**e 5651 Economic systems**

Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the production, distribution, consumption and use of goods and services, such as systems for implementing and monitoring economic policies.

*Exclusions: utilities systems (e5301); labour and employment systems (e5901)*

**e 5652 Economic policies**

Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the production, distribution, consumption and use of goods and services, such as economic doctrines adopted and implemented by governments.

*Exclusions: utilities policies (e5302); labour and employment policies (e5902)*

**e 5658 Economic services, systems and policies, other specified****e 5659 Economic services, systems and policies, unspecified****e 570 Social security services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies aimed at providing income support to people who, because of age, poverty, unemployment, health condition or disability, require public assistance that is funded either by general tax revenues or contributory schemes.

*Exclusion: economic services, systems and policies (e565)*

**e 5700 Social security services**

Services and programmes aimed at providing income support to people who, because of age, poverty, unemployment, health condition or disability, require public assistance that is funded either by general tax revenues or contributory schemes, such as services for determining eligibility, delivering or distributing assistance payments for the following types of programmes: social assistance programmes (e.g. non-contributory welfare, poverty or other needs-based compensation), social insurance programmes (e.g. contributory accident or unemployment insurance), and disability and related pension schemes (e.g. income replacement), including those who provide these services.

*Exclusions: health services (e5800)*



- e 5701 Social security systems**  
Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the programmes and schemes that provide income support to people who, because of age, poverty, unemployment, health condition or disability, require public assistance, such as systems for the implementation of rules and regulations governing the eligibility for social assistance, welfare, unemployment insurance payments, pensions and disability benefits.
- e 5702 Social security policies**  
Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the programmes and schemes that provide income support to people who, because of age, poverty, unemployment, health condition or disability, require public assistance, such as legislation and regulations governing the eligibility for social assistance, welfare, unemployment insurance payments, disability and related pensions and disability benefits.
- e 5708 Social security services, systems and policies, other specified**
- e 5709 Social security services, systems and policies, unspecified**

**e 575****General social support services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies aimed at providing support to those requiring assistance in areas such as shopping, housework, transport, self-care and care of others, in order to function more fully in society.

*Exclusions: social security services, systems and policies (e570); personal care providers and personal assistants (e340); health services, systems and policies (e580)*

- e 5750 General social support services**  
Services and programmes aimed at providing social support to people who, because of age, poverty, unemployment, health condition or disability, require public assistance in the areas of shopping, housework, transport, self-care and care of others, in order to function more fully in society.
- e 5751 General social support systems**  
Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the programmes and schemes that provide social support to people who, because of age, poverty, unemployment, health condition or disability, require such support, including systems for the implementation of rules and regulations governing eligibility for social support services and the provision of these services.



**e 5752 General social support policies**

Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the programme and schemes that provide social support to people who, because of age, poverty, unemployment, health condition or disability, require such support, including legislation and regulations governing eligibility for social support.

**e 5758 General social support services, systems and policies, other specified****e 5759 General social support services, systems and policies, unspecified****e 580 Health services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies for preventing and treating health problems, providing medical rehabilitation and promoting a healthy lifestyle.

*Exclusion: general social support services, systems and policies (e575)*

**e 5800 Health services**

Services and programmes at a local, community, regional, state or national level, aimed at delivering interventions to individuals for their physical, psychological and social well-being, such as health promotion and disease prevention services, primary care services, acute care, rehabilitation and long-term care services; services that are publicly or privately funded, delivered on a short-term, long-term, periodic or one-time basis, in a variety of service settings such as community, home-based, school and work settings, general hospitals, speciality hospitals, clinics, and residential and non-residential care facilities, including those who provide these services.

**e 5801 Health systems**

Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the range of services provided to individuals for their physical, psychological and social well-being, in a variety of settings including community, home-based, school and work settings, general hospitals, speciality hospitals, clinics, and residential and non-residential care facilities, such as systems for implementing regulations and standards that determine eligibility for services, provision of devices, assistive technology or other adapted equipment, and legislation such as health acts that govern features of a health system such as accessibility, universality, portability, public funding and comprehensiveness.

**e5802 Health policies**

Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the range of services provided to individuals for their physical, psychological and social well-being, in a variety of settings including community, home-based, school and work settings, general hospitals, speciality hospitals, clinics, and residential and non-residential care facilities, such as policies and standards that determine eligibility for services, provision of devices, assistive technology or other adapted equipment, and legislation such as health acts that govern features of a health system such as accessibility, universality, portability, public funding and comprehensiveness.

**e5808 Health services, systems and policies, other specified****e5809 Health services, systems and policies, unspecified****e585 Education and training services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies for the acquisition, maintenance and improvement of knowledge, expertise and vocational or artistic skills. See UNESCO's International Standard Classification of Education (ISCED-1997).

**e5850 Education and training services**

Services and programmes concerned with education and the acquisition, maintenance and improvement of knowledge, expertise and vocational or artistic skills, such as those provided for different levels of education (e.g. preschool, primary school, secondary school, post-secondary institutions, professional programmes, training and skills programmes, apprenticeships and continuing education), including those who provide these services.

**e5851 Education and training systems**

Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the delivery of education programmes, such as systems for the implementation of policies and standards that determine eligibility for public or private education and special needs-based programmes; local, regional or national boards of education or other authoritative bodies that govern features of the education systems, including curricula, size of classes, numbers of schools in a region, fees and subsidies, special meal programmes and after-school care services.

**e 5852 Education and training policies**

Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the delivery of education programme, such as policies and standards that determine eligibility for public or private education and special needs-based programmes, and dictate the structure of local, regional or national boards of education or other authoritative bodies that govern features of the education system, including curricula, size of classes, numbers of schools in a region, fees and subsidies, special meal programmes and after-school care services.

**e 5858 Education and training services, systems and policies, other specified****e 5859 Education and training services, systems and policies, unspecified****e 590 Labour and employment services, systems and policies**

Services, systems and policies related to finding suitable work for persons who are unemployed or looking for different work, or to support individuals already employed who are seeking promotion.

*Exclusion: economic services, systems and policies (e565)*

**e 5900 Labour and employment services**

Services and programmes provided by local, regional or national governments, or private organizations to find suitable work for persons who are unemployed or looking for different work, or to support individuals already employed, such as services of employment search and preparation, reemployment, job placement, outplacement, vocational follow-up, occupational health and safety services, and work environment services (e.g. ergonomics, human resources and personnel management services, labour relations services, professional association services), including those who provide these services.

**e 5901 Labour and employment systems**

Administrative control and monitoring mechanisms that govern the distribution of occupations and other forms of remunerative work in the economy, such as systems for implementing policies and standards for employment creation, employment security, designated and competitive employment, labour standards and law, and trade unions.



- e 5902    **Labour and employment policies**  
Legislation, regulations and standards that govern the distribution of occupations and other forms of remunerative work in the economy, such as standards and policies for employment creation, employment security, designated and competitive employment, labour standards and law, and trade unions.
- e 5908    **Labour and employment services, systems and policies, other specified**
- e 5909    **Labour and employment services, systems and policies, unspecified**

**e 595**    **Political services, systems and policies**  
Services, systems and policies related to voting, elections and governance of countries, regions and communities, as well as international organizations.

- e 5950    **Political services**  
Services and structures such as local, regional and national governments, international organizations and the people who are elected or nominated to positions within these structures, such as the United Nations, European Union, governments, regional authorities, local village authorities, traditional leaders.
- e 5951    **Political systems**  
Structures and related operations that organise political and economic power in a society, such as executive and legislative branches of government, and the constitutional or other legal sources from which they derive their authority, such as political organizational doctrine, constitutions, agencies of executive and legislative branches of government, the military.
- e 5952    **Political policy**  
Laws and policies formulated and enforced through political systems that govern the operation of the political system, such as policies governing election campaigns, registration of political parties, voting, and members in international political organizations, including treaties, constitutional and other law governing legislation and regulation.
- e 5958    **Political services, systems and policies, other specified**
- e 5959    **Political services, systems and policies, unspecified**

**e 598**    **Services, systems and policies, other specified**



**e599**

Services, systems and policies, unspecified

1



ICE

**Annexes**





## Annex 1

# Taxonomic and terminological issues

The ICF classification is organized in a hierarchical scheme keeping in mind the following standard taxonomic principles:

- The components of Body Functions and Structures, Activities and Participation, and Environmental Factors are classified independently. Hence, a term included under one component is not repeated under another.
- Within each component, the categories are arranged in a stem-branch-leaf scheme, so that a lower-level category shares the attributes of the higher-level categories of which it is a member.
- Categories are mutually exclusive, i.e. no two categories at the same level share exactly the same attributes. However, this should not be confused with the use of more than one category to classify a particular individual's functioning. Such a practice is allowed, indeed encouraged, where necessary.

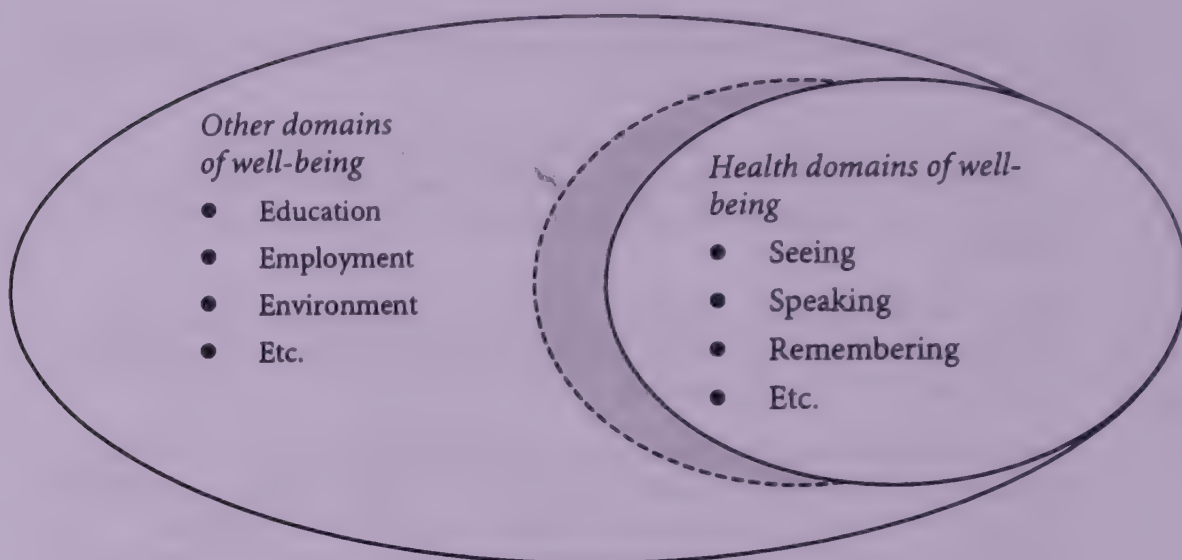
## 1. Terms for categories in ICF

Terms are the designation of defined concepts in linguistic expressions, such as words or phrases. Most of the terms over which confusion arises are used with common-sense meanings in everyday speech and writing. For example, impairment, disability and handicap are often used interchangeably in everyday contexts, although in the 1980 version of ICIDH these terms had stipulated definitions, which gave them a precisely defined meaning. During the revision process, the term “handicap” was abandoned and “disability” was used as an umbrella term for all three perspectives - body, individual and societal. Clarity and precision, however, are needed to define the various concepts, so that appropriate terms may be chosen to express each of the underlying concepts unambiguously. This is particularly important because ICF, as a written classification, will be translated into many languages. Beyond a common understanding of the concepts, it is also essential that an agreement be reached on the term that best reflects the content in each language. There may be many alternatives, and decisions should be made based on accuracy, acceptability, and overall usefulness. It is hoped that the usefulness of ICF will go in parallel with its clarity.

With this aim in mind, notes on some of the terms used in ICF follow:

**Well-being** is a general term encompassing the total universe of human life domains, including physical, mental and social aspects, that make up what can be called a “good life”. Health domains are a subset of domains that make up the total universe of human life. This relationship is presented in the following diagram representing well-being:

Fig. 1 The universe of well-being



**Health states and health domains:** A health state is the level of functioning within a given health domain of ICF. Health domains denote areas of life that are interpreted to be within the “health” notion, such as those which, for health systems purposes, can be defined as the primary responsibility of the health system. ICF does not dictate a fixed boundary between health and health-related domains. There may be a grey zone depending on differing conceptualizations of health and health-related elements which can then be mapped onto the ICF domains.

**Health-related states and health-related domains:** A health-related state is the level of functioning within a given health-related domain of ICF. Health-related domains are those areas of functioning that, while they have a strong relationship to a health condition, are not likely to be the primary responsibility of the health system, but rather of other systems contributing to overall well-being. In ICF, only those domains of well-being related to health are covered.

**Health condition** is an umbrella term for disease (acute or chronic), disorder, injury or trauma. A health condition may also include other circumstances such as pregnancy, ageing, stress, congenital anomaly, or genetic predisposition. Health conditions are coded using ICD-10.

**Functioning** is an umbrella term for body functions, body structures, activities and participation. It denotes the positive aspects of the interaction between an individual (with a health condition) and that individual's contextual factors (environmental and personal factors).

**Disability** is an umbrella term for impairments, activity limitations and participation restrictions. It denotes the negative aspects of the interaction between an individual (with a health condition) and that individual's contextual factors (environmental and personal factors).

**Body functions** are the physiological functions of body systems, including psychological functions. "Body" refers to the human organism as a whole, and thus includes the brain. Hence, mental (or psychological) functions are subsumed under body functions. The standard for these functions is considered to be the statistical norm for humans.

**Body structures** are the structural or anatomical parts of the body such as organs, limbs and their components classified according to body systems. The standard for these structures is considered to be the statistical norm for humans.

**Impairment** is a loss or abnormality in body structure or physiological function (including mental functions). Abnormality here is used strictly to refer to a significant variation from established statistical norms (i.e. as a deviation from a population mean within measured standard norms) and should be used only in this sense.

**Activity** is the execution of a task or action by an individual. It represents the individual perspective of functioning.

**Activity limitations**<sup>18</sup> are difficulties an individual may have in executing activities. An activity limitation may range from a slight to a severe deviation in terms of quality or quantity in executing the activity in a manner or to the extent that is expected of people without the health condition.

**Participation** is a person's involvement in a life situation. It represents the societal perspective of functioning.

**Participation restrictions**<sup>19</sup> are problems an individual may experience in involvement in life situations. The presence of a participation restriction is determined by comparing an individual's participation to that which is expected of an individual without disability in that culture or society.

**Contextual factors** are the factors that together constitute the complete context of an individual's life, and in particular the background against which health states are classified in ICF. There are two components of contextual factors: Environmental Factors and Personal Factors.

**Environmental factors** constitute a component of ICF, and refer to all aspects of the external or extrinsic world that form the context of an individual's life and, as such, have an impact on that person's functioning. Environmental factors include

---

<sup>18</sup> "Activity limitation" replaces the term "disability" used in the 1980 version of ICIDH.

<sup>19</sup> "Participation restriction" replaces the term "handicap" used in the 1980 version of ICIDH.



the physical world and its features, the human-made physical world, other people in different relationships and roles, attitudes and values, social systems and services, and policies, rules and laws.

*Personal factors* are contextual factors that relate to the individual such as age, gender, social status, life experiences and so on, which are not currently classified in ICF but which users may incorporate in their applications of the classification.

*Facilitators* are factors in a person's environment that, through their absence or presence, improve functioning and reduce disability. These include aspects such as a physical environment that is accessible, the availability of relevant assistive technology, and positive attitudes of people towards disability, as well as services, systems and policies that aim to increase the involvement of all people with a health condition in all areas of life. Absence of a factor can also be facilitating, for example the absence of stigma or negative attitudes. Facilitators can prevent an impairment or activity limitation from becoming a participation restriction, since the actual performance of an action is enhanced, despite the person's problem with capacity.

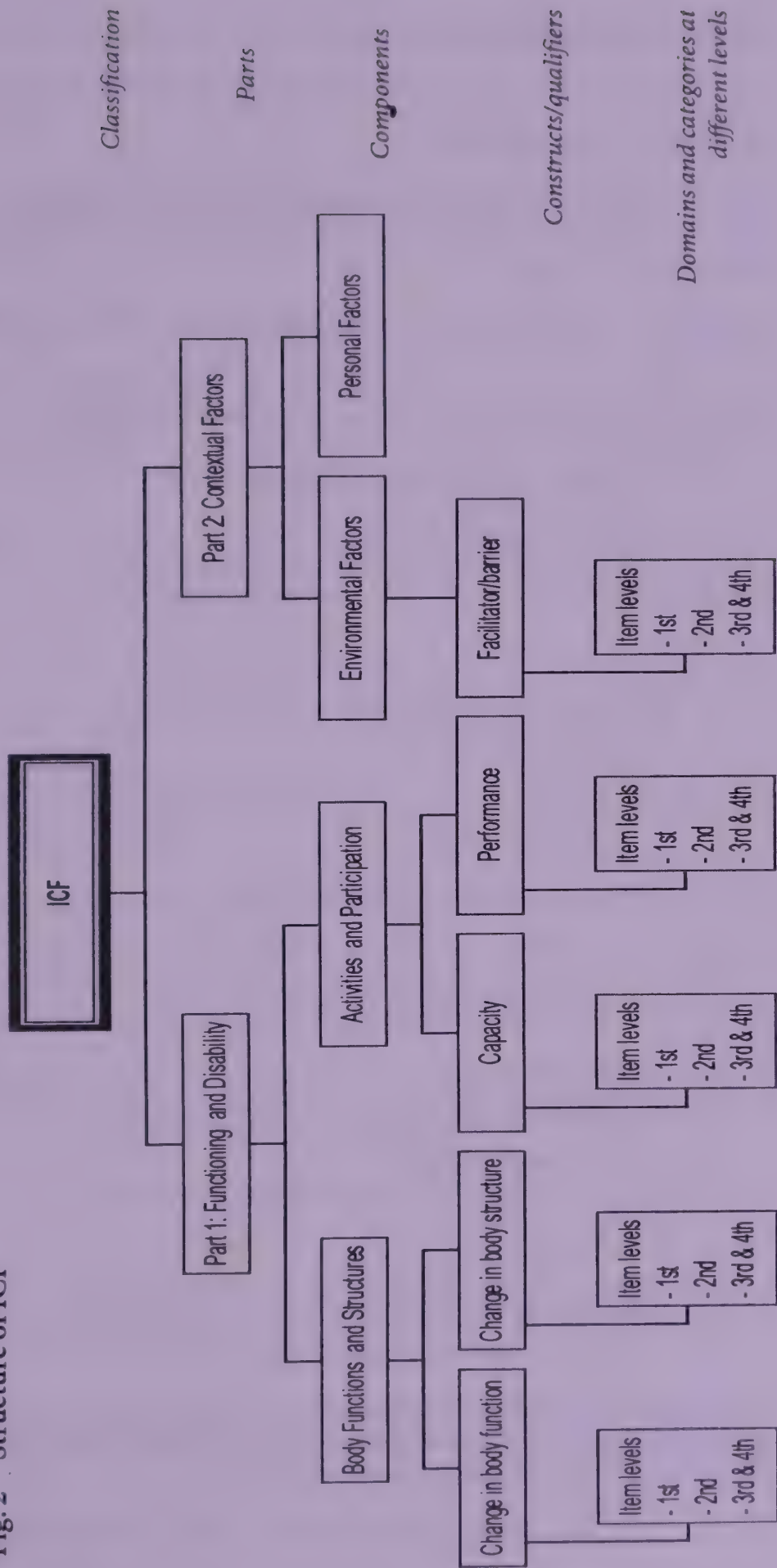
*Barriers* are factors in a person's environment that, through their absence or presence, limit functioning and create disability. These include aspects such as a physical environment that is inaccessible, lack of relevant assistive technology, and negative attitudes of people towards disability, as well as services, systems and policies that are either nonexistent or that hinder the involvement of all people with a health condition in all areas of life.

*Capacity* is a construct that indicates, as a qualifier, the highest probable level of functioning that a person may reach in a domain in the Activities and Participation list at a given moment. Capacity is measured in a uniform or standard environment, and thus reflects the environmentally adjusted ability of the individual. The Environmental Factors component can be used to describe the features of this uniform or standard environment.

*Performance* is a construct that describes, as a qualifier, what individuals do in their current environment, and so brings in the aspect of a person's involvement in life situations. The current environment is also described using the Environmental Factors component.



Fig. 2 Structure of ICF



## 2. ICF as a classification

In order to understand the overall classification of ICF, it is important to understand its structure. This is reflected in the definitions of the following terms and illustrated in Fig. 2.

*Classification* is the overall structure and universe of ICF. In the hierarchy, this is the top term.

*Parts of the classification* are each of the two main subdivisions of the classification.

- Part 1 covers Functioning and Disability
- Part 2 covers Contextual Factors.

*Components* are each of the two main subdivisions of the parts.

The components of Part 1 are:

- Body Functions and Structures
- Activities and Participation.

The components of Part 2 are:

- Environmental Factors
- Personal Factors (not classified in ICF).

*Constructs* are defined through the use of qualifiers with relevant codes.

There are four constructs for Part 1 and one for Part 2.

For Part 1, the constructs are:

- Change in body function
- Change in body structure
- Capacity
- Performance

For Part 2, the construct is:

- Facilitators or barriers in environmental factors

*Domains* are a practical, meaningful set of related physiological functions, anatomical structures, actions, tasks, or areas of life. Domains make up the different chapters and blocks within each component.

*Categories* are classes and subclasses within a domain of a component, i.e. units of classification.

*Levels* make up the hierarchical order providing indications as to the detail of categories (i.e. granularity of the domains and categories). The first level comprises all the second-level items, and so on.

### 3. Definitions for ICF categories

Definitions are statements that set out the essential attributes (i.e. qualities, properties or relationships) of the concept designated by the category. A definition states what sort of thing or phenomenon the term denotes, and operationally, notes how it differs from other related things or phenomena.

During the construction of the definitions of the ICF categories, the following ideal characteristics of operational definitions, including inclusions and exclusions, were kept in mind:

- Definitions should be meaningful and logically consistent.
- They must uniquely identify the concept intended by the category.
- They must present essential attributes of the concept – both intentional (what the concept signifies intrinsically) and extensional (what objects or phenomena it refers to).
- They should be precise, unambiguous, and cover the full meaning of the term.
- They should be expressed in operational terms (e.g. in terms of severity, duration, relative importance, and possible associations).
- They should avoid circularity, i.e. the term itself, or any synonym for it, should not appear in the definition, nor should it include a term defined elsewhere using the first term in its definition.
- Where appropriate, they should refer to possible etiological or interactive factors.
- They must fit the attributes of the higher-ranking terms (e.g. a third-level term should include the general characteristics of the second-level category to which it belongs).
- They must be consistent with the attributes of the subordinate terms (e.g. the attributes of a second-level term cannot contradict those of third-level terms under it).
- They must not be figurative or metaphorical, but operational.

- They should make empirical statements that are observable, testable or inferable by indirect means.
- They should be expressed in neutral terms as far as possible, without undue negative connotation.
- They should be short and avoid technical terms where possible (with the exception of some Body Functions and Structures terms).
- They should have inclusions that provide synonyms and examples that take into account cultural variation and differences across the life span.
- They should have exclusions to alert users to possible confusion with related terms.

#### 4. Additional note on terminology

Underlying the terminology of any classification is the fundamental distinction between the phenomena being classified and the structure of the classification itself. As a general matter, it is important to distinguish between the world and the terms we use to describe the world. For example, the terms 'dimension' or 'domain' could be precisely defined to refer to the world and 'component' and 'category' defined to refer only to the classification.

At the same time, there is a correspondence (i.e. a matching function) between these terms and it is possible that a wide variety of users may use these terms interchangeably. For more highly specialized requirements, for database construction and research modelling for example, it is essential for users to identify separately, and with a clearly distinct terminology, the elements of the conceptual model and those of the classification structure. Yet, it has been felt that the precision and purity that such an approach provides is not worth the price paid in a level of abstraction that might undermine the usefulness of the ICF, or more importantly to restrict the range of potential users of this classification.



## Annex 2

# Coding guidelines for ICF

ICF is intended for the coding of different health and health-related states.<sup>20</sup> Users are strongly recommended to read through the Introduction to ICF before studying the coding rules and guidelines. Furthermore, it is highly recommended that users obtain training in the use of the classification through WHO and its network of collaborating centres.

The following are features of the classification that have a bearing on its use.

## 1. Organization and structure

### *Parts of the Classification*

ICF is organized into two parts.

Part 1 is composed of the following components:

- Body Functions and Body Structures
- Activities and Participation.

Part 2 is composed of the following components:

- Environmental Factors
- Personal Factors (currently not classified in the ICF).

These components are denoted by prefixes in each code.

- *b* for Body Functions and
- *s* for Body Structures
- *d* for Activities and Participation
- *e* for Environmental Factors

The prefix *d* denotes the domains within the component of Activities and Participation. At the user's discretion, the prefix *d* can be replaced by *a* or *p*, to denote activities and participation respectively.

---

<sup>20</sup> The disease itself should not be coded. This can be done using the International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems, Tenth Revision (ICD-10), which is a classification designed to permit the systematic recording, analysis, interpretation and comparison of mortality and morbidity data on diagnoses of diseases and other health problems. Users of ICF are encouraged to use this classification in conjunction with ICD-10 (see page 3 of Introduction regarding overlap between the classifications)

The letters *b*, *s*, *d* and *e* are followed by a numeric code that starts with the chapter number (one digit), followed by the second level (two digits), and the third and fourth level<sup>21</sup> (one digit each). For example, in the Body Functions classification there are these codes:

<b>b2</b>	Sensory functions and pain	(first-level item)
<b>b210</b>	Seeing functions	(second-level item)
<b>b2102</b>	Quality of vision	(third-level item)
<b>b21022</b>	Contrast sensitivity	(fourth-level item)

Depending on the user's needs, any number of applicable codes can be employed at each level. To describe an individual's situation, more than one code at each level may be applicable. These may be independent or interrelated.

In ICF, a person's health state may be assigned an array of codes across the domains of the components of the classification. The maximum number of codes available for each application is 34 at the chapter level (8 body functions, 8 body structures, 9 performance and 9 capacity codes), and 362 at the second level. At the third and fourth levels, there are up to 1424 codes available, which together constitute the full version of the classification. In real-life applications of ICF, a set of 3 to 18 codes may be adequate to describe a case with two-level (three-digit) precision. Generally, the more detailed four-level version is intended for specialist services (e.g. rehabilitation outcomes, geriatrics, or mental health), whereas the two-level classification can be used for surveys and health outcome evaluation.

The domains should be coded as applicable to a given moment (i.e. as a snapshot description of an encounter), which is the default position. Use over time, however, is also possible in order to describe a trajectory over time or a process. Users should then identify their coding style and the time-frame that they use.

### *Chapters*

Each component of the classification is organized into chapter and domain headings under which are common categories or specific items. For example, in the Body Functions classification, Chapter 1 deals with all mental functions.

### *Blocks*

The chapters are often subdivided into "blocks" of categories. For example, in Chapter 3 of the Activities and Participation classification (Communication), there are three blocks: Communicating•Receiving (d310–d329), Communicating•Producing (d330–d349), and Conversation and using communication devices and techniques (d350–d369). Blocks are provided as a convenience to the user and, strictly speaking, are not part of the structure of the classification and normally will not be used for coding purposes.

---

<sup>21</sup> Only the Body Functions and Body Structure classifications contain fourth-level items.

### *Categories*

Within each chapter there are individual two-, three- or four-level categories, each with a short definition and inclusions and exclusions as appropriate to assist in the selection of the appropriate code.

### *Definitions*

ICF gives operational definitions of the health and health-related categories, as opposed to "vernacular" or layperson's definitions. These definitions describe the essential attributes of each domain (e.g. qualities, properties, and relationships) and contain information as to what is included and excluded in each category. The definitions also contain commonly used anchor points for assessment, for application in surveys and questionnaires, or alternatively, for the results of assessment instruments coded in ICF terms. For example, visual acuity functions are defined in terms of monocular and binocular acuity at near and far distances so that the severity of visual acuity difficulty can be coded as none, mild, moderate, severe or total.

### *Inclusion terms*

Inclusion terms are listed after the definition of many categories. They are provided as a guide to the content of the category, and are not meant to be exhaustive. In the case of second-level items, the inclusions cover all embedded, third-level items.

### *Exclusion terms*

Exclusion terms are provided where, owing to the similarity with another term, application might prove difficult. For example, it might be thought that the category "Toileting" includes the category "Caring for body parts". To distinguish the two, however, "Toileting" is excluded from category d520 "Caring for body parts" and coded to d530.

### *Other specified*

At the end of each embedded set of third- or fourth-level items, and at the end of each chapter, are "other specified" categories (uniquely identified by the final code number 8). These allow for the coding of aspects of functioning that are not included within any of the other specific categories. When "other specified" is employed, the user should specify the new item in an additional list.

### *Unspecified*

The last categories within each embedded set of third- or fourth-level items, and at the end of each chapter, are "unspecified" categories that allow for the coding of functions that fit within the group but for which there is insufficient information to permit the assignment of a more specific category. This code has the same meaning as the second- or third-level term immediately above, without any additional information (for blocks, the "other specified" and "unspecified" categories are joined into a single item, but are always identified by the final code number 9).



### Qualifiers

The ICF codes require the use of one or more qualifiers, which denote, for example, the magnitude of the level of health or severity of the problem at issue. Qualifiers are coded as one, two or more numbers after a point. Use of any code should be accompanied by at least one qualifier. Without qualifiers codes have no inherent meaning (by default, WHO interprets incomplete codes as signifying the absence of a problem -- xxx.00).

The first qualifier for Body Functions and Structures, the performance and capacity qualifiers for Activities and Participation, and the first qualifier for Environmental Factors all describe the extent of problems in the respective component.

All components are quantified using the same generic scale. Having a problem may mean an impairment, limitation, restriction or barrier, depending on the construct. Appropriate qualifying words as shown in brackets below should be chosen according to the relevant classification domain (where xxx stands for the second-level domain number):

xxx.0 NO problem	(none, absent, negligible,... )	0–4 %
xxx.1 MILD problem	(slight, low,...)	5–24 %
xxx.2 MODERATE problem	(medium, fair,...)	25–49 %
xxx.3 SEVERE problem	(high, extreme, ...)	50–95 %
xxx.4 COMPLETE problem	(total,...)	96–100 %
xxx.8 not specified		
xxx.9 not applicable		

Broad ranges of percentages are provided for those cases in which calibrated assessment instruments or other standards are available to quantify the impairment, capacity limitation, performance problem or environmental barrier/facilitator. For example, when “no problem” or “complete problem” is coded, this may have a margin of error of up to 5%. A “moderate problem” is defined as up to half of the scale of total difficulty. The percentages are to be calibrated in different domains with reference to population standards as percentiles. For this quantification to be used in a universal manner, assessment procedures have to be developed through research.

In the case of the Environmental Factors component, this first qualifier can also be used to denote the extent of positive aspects of the environment, or facilitators. To denote facilitators, the same 0–4 scale can be used, but the point is replaced by a plus sign: e.g. e110+2. Environmental factors can be coded either (i) in relation to each component; or (ii) without relation to each component (see section 3 below). The first style is preferable since it identifies the impact and attribution more clearly.

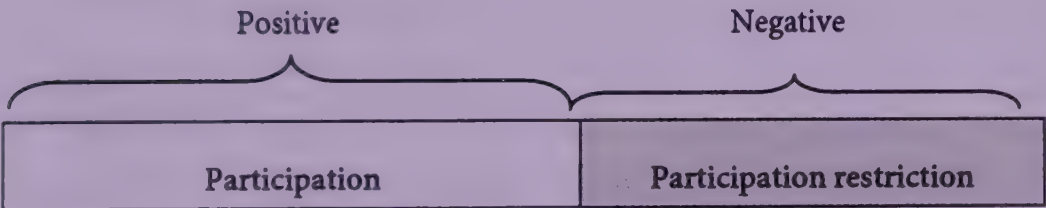
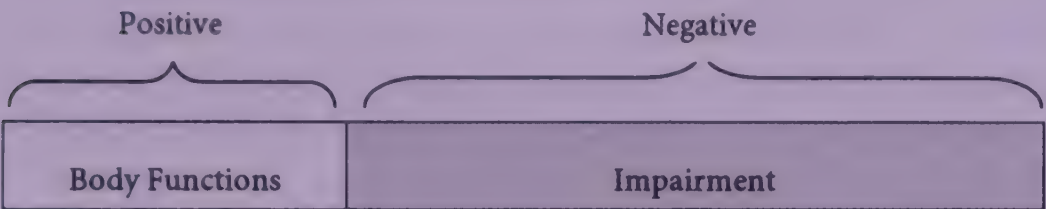
### Additional qualifiers

For different users, it might be appropriate and helpful to add other kinds of information to the coding of each item. There are a variety of additional qualifiers that could be useful, as mentioned later.



Coding positive aspects

At the user’s discretion coding scales can be developed to capture the positive aspects of functioning:



## 2. General coding rules

The following rules are essential for accurate retrieval of information for the various uses of the classification.

### *Select an array of codes to form an individual's profile*

ICF classifies health and health-related states and therefore requires the assigning of a series of codes that best describe the profile of the person's functioning. ICF is not an "event classification" like ICD-10 in which a particular health condition is classified with a single code. As the functioning of a person can be affected at the body, individual and societal level, the user should always take into consideration all components of the classification, namely Body Functions and Structures, Activities and Participation, and Environmental Factors. Though it is impractical to expect that all the possible codes will be used for every encounter, depending on the setting of the encounter users will select the most salient codes for their purpose to describe a given health experience.

### *Code relevant information*

Coded information is always in the context of a health condition. Although to use the codes it is not necessary to trace the links between the health condition and the aspects of functioning and disability that are coded, ICF is a health classification and so presumes the presence of a health condition of some kind. Therefore, information about what a person does or does not choose to do is not related to a functioning problem associated with a health condition and should not be coded. For example, if a person decides not to begin new relationships with his or her neighbours for reasons other than health, then it is not appropriate to use category d7200, which includes the actions of forming relationships. Conversely, if the person's decision is linked to a health condition (e.g. depression), then the code should be applied.

Information that reflects the person's feeling of involvement or satisfaction with the level of functioning is currently not coded in ICF. Further research may provide additional qualifiers that will allow this information to be coded.

Only those aspects of the person's functioning relevant to a predefined time-frame should be coded. Functions that relate to an earlier encounter and have no bearing on the current encounter should not be recorded.

### *Code explicit information*

When assigning codes, the user should not make an inference about the inter-relationship between an impairment of body functions or structure, activity limitation or participation restriction. For example, if a person has a limitation in functioning in moving around, it is not justifiable to assume that the person has an impairment of movement functions. Similarly, from the fact that a person has a limited capacity to move around it is unwarranted to infer that he or she has a performance problem in moving around. The user must obtain explicit information on Body Functions and Structures and on capacity and performance

separately (in some instances, mental functions for example, an inference from other observations is required since the body function in question is not directly observable).

### Code specific information

Health and health-related states should be recorded as specifically as possible, by assigning the most appropriate ICF category. For example, the most specific code for a person with night blindness is b21020 "Light sensitivity". If, however, for some reason this level of detail cannot be applied, the corresponding "parent" code in the hierarchy can be used instead (in this case, b2102 Quality of vision, b210 Seeing functions, or b2 Sensory functions and pain).

To identify the appropriate code easily and quickly, the use of the ICF Browser,<sup>22</sup> which provides a search engine function with an electronic index of the full version of the classification, is strongly recommended. Alternatively, the alphabetical index can be used.

## 3. Coding conventions for the Environmental Factors component

For the coding of environmental factors, three coding conventions are open for use:

### Convention 1

Environmental factors are coded alone, without relating these codes to body functions, body structures or activities and participation.

Body functions	_____
Body structures	_____
Activities and Participation	_____
Environment	_____

### Convention 2

Environmental factors are coded for every component.

Body functions	_____	E code	_____
Body structures	_____	E code	_____
Activities and Participation	_____	E code	_____

---

<sup>22</sup> The ICF Browser in different languages can be downloaded from the ICF website: <http://www.who.int/classification/icf>



Convention 3

Environmental factors are coded for capacity and performance qualifiers in the Activities and Participation component for every item.

Performance qualifier \_\_\_\_\_ E code \_\_\_\_\_  
Capacity qualifier \_\_\_\_\_ E code \_\_\_\_\_

4. Component-specific coding rules

4.1 Coding body functions

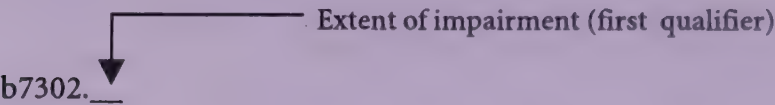
Definitions

*Body functions* are the physiological functions of body systems (including psychological functions). *Impairments* are problems in body function or structure as a significant deviation or loss.

Using the qualifier for body functions

Body functions are coded with one qualifier that indicates the extent or magnitude of the impairment. The presence of an impairment can be identified as a loss or lack, reduction, addition or excess, or deviation.

The impairment of a person with hemiparesis can be described with code b7302 Power of muscles of one side of the body:



Once an impairment is present, it can be scaled in severity using the generic qualifier. For example:

b7302.1	MILD impairment of power of muscles of one side of body	(5–24 %)
b7302.2	MODERATE impairment of power of muscles of one side of body	(25–49 %)
b7302.3	SEVERE impairment of power of muscles of one side of body	(50–95 %)
b7302.4	COMPLETE impairment of power of muscles of one side of body	(96–100 %)

The absence of an impairment (according to a predefined threshold level) is indicated by the value “0” for the generic qualifier. For example:

b7302.0 NO impairment in power of muscles of one side of body

If there is insufficient information to specify the severity of the impairment, the value “8” should be used. For example, if a person’s health record states that the person is suffering from weakness of the right side of the body without giving further details, then the following code can be applied:

b7302.8 Impairment of power of muscles of one side of body, not specified



There may be situations where it is inappropriate to apply a particular code. For example, the code b650 Menstruation functions is not applicable for women before or beyond a certain age (pre-menarche or post-menopause). For these cases, the value “9” is assigned:

#### **b650.9 Menstruation functions, not applicable**

#### *Structural correlates of body functions*

The classifications of Body Functions and Body Structures are designed to be parallel. When a body function code is used, the user should check whether the corresponding body structure code is applicable. For example, body functions include basic human senses such as b210-b229 Seeing and related functions,” and their structural correlates occur between s210 and s230 as “eye and related structures” .

#### *Interrelationship between impairments*

Impairments may result in other impairments; for example, muscle power may impair movement functions, heart functions may relate to respiratory functions, perception may relate to thought functions.

#### *Identifying impairments in body functions*

For those impairments that cannot always be observed directly (e.g. mental functions), the user can infer the impairment from observation of behaviour. For example, in a clinical setting memory may be assessed through standardized tests, and although it is not possible to actually “observe” brain function, depending on the results of these tests it may be reasonable to assume that the mental functions of memory are impaired.

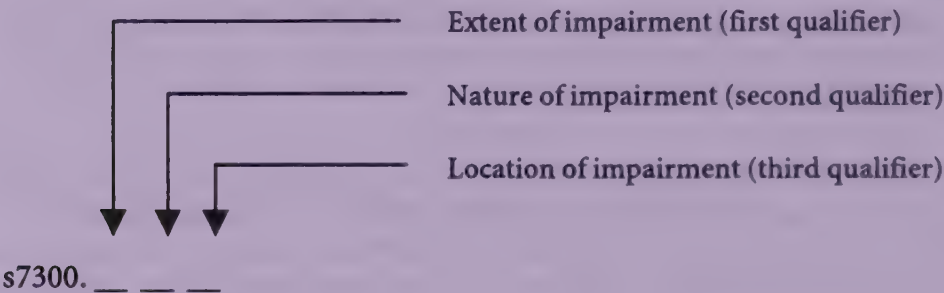
4.2 Coding body structures

Definitions

*Body structures* are anatomical parts of the body such as organs, limbs and their components. *Impairments* are problems in body function or structure as a significant deviation or loss.

Using qualifiers for coding body structures

Body structures are coded with three qualifiers. The first qualifier describes the extent or magnitude of the impairment, the second qualifier is used to indicate the nature of the change, and the third qualifier denotes the location of the impairment.



The descriptive schemes used for the three qualifiers are listed in Table 1.

Table 1. Scaling of qualifiers for body structures

First qualifier Extent of impairment	Second qualifier Nature of impairment	Third qualifier (suggested) Location of impairment
0 NO impairment	0 no change in structure	0 more than one region
1 MILD impairment	1 total absence	1 right
2 MODERATE impairment	2 partial absence	2 left
3 SEVERE impairment	3 additional part	3 both sides
4 COMPLETE impairment	4 aberrant dimensions	4 front
8 not specified	5 discontinuity	5 back
9 not applicable	6 deviating position	6 proximal
	7 qualitative changes in structure, including accumulation of fluid	7 distal
	8 not specified	8 not specified
	9 not applicable	9 not applicable

### 4.3 Coding the Activities and Participation component

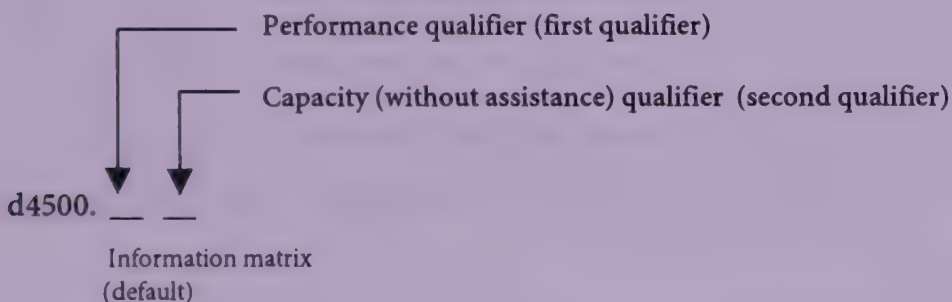
#### Definitions

**Activity** is the execution of a task or action by an individual. **Participation** is involvement in a life situation. **Activity limitations** are difficulties an individual may have in executing activities. **Participation restrictions** are problems an individual may experience in involvement in life situations.

The Activities and Participation classification is a single list of domains.

#### Using the capacity and performance qualifiers

Activities and Participation is coded with two qualifiers: the *performance* qualifier, which occupies the first digit position after the point, and the *capacity* qualifier, which occupies the second digit position after the point. The code that identifies the category from the Activities and Participation list and the two qualifiers form the default information matrix.



The performance qualifier describes what an individual does in his or her current environment. Because the current environment brings in a societal context, performance as recorded by this qualifier can also be understood as "involvement in a life situation" or "the lived experience" of people in the actual context in which they live. This context includes the environmental factors – i.e. all aspects of the physical, social and attitudinal world. This features of the current environment can be coded using the Environmental Factors classification.

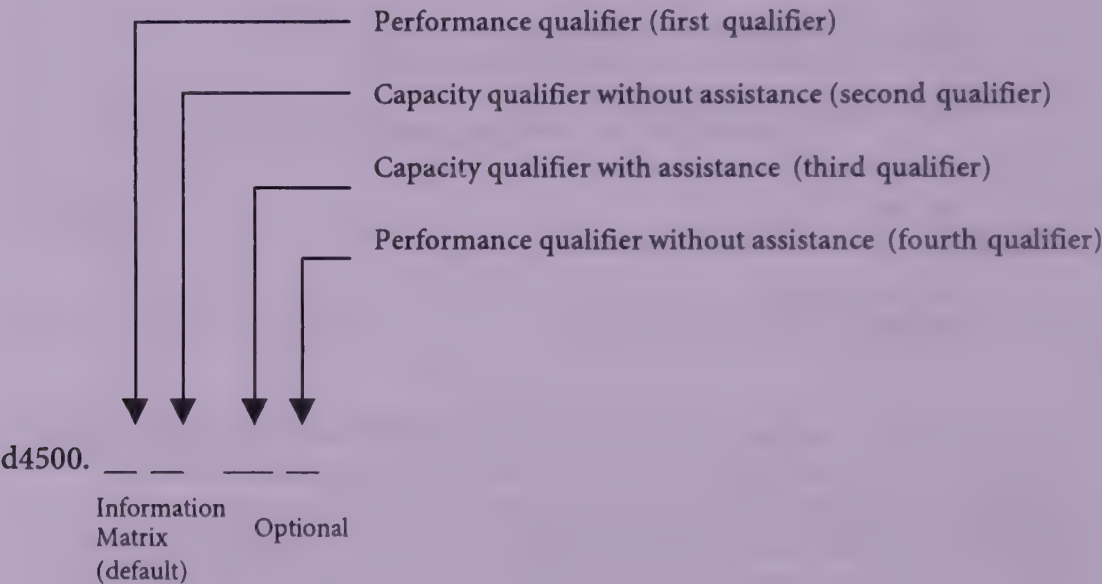
The capacity qualifier describes an individual's ability to execute a task or an action. This construct aims to indicate the highest probable level of functioning that a person may reach in a given domain at a given moment. To assess the full ability of the individual, one would need to have a "standardized" environment to neutralize the varying impact of different environments on the ability of the individual. This standardized environment may be: (a) an actual environment commonly used for capacity assessment in test settings; (b) in cases where this is not possible, an assumed environment which can be thought to have an uniform impact. This environment can be called the "uniform" or "standard" environment. Thus, the capacity construct reflects the environmentally adjusted ability of the individual. This adjustment has to be the same for all persons in all countries to allow international comparisons. To be precise, the features of the

uniform or standard environment can be coded using the Environmental Factors component. The gap between capacity and performance reflects the difference between the impacts of the current and uniform environments and thus provides a useful guide as to what can be done to the environment of the individual to improve performance.

Typically, the capacity qualifier without assistance is used in order to describe the individual's true ability which is not enhanced by an assistance device or personal assistance. Since the performance qualifier addresses the individual's current environment, the presence of assistive devices or personal assistance or barriers can be directly observed. The nature of the facilitator or barrier can be described using the Environmental Factors classification.

Optional qualifiers

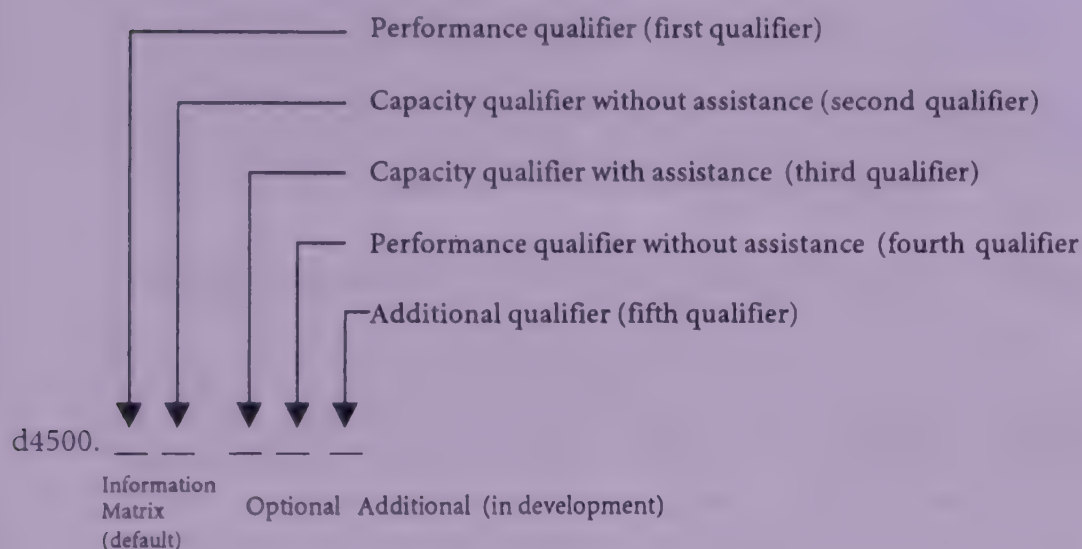
The third and fourth (optional) qualifiers provide users with the possibility of coding capacity with assistance and performance without assistance.





### Additional qualifiers

The fifth digit position is reserved for qualifiers that may be developed in the future, such as a qualifier for involvement or subjective satisfaction.



Both capacity and performance qualifiers can further be used both with and without assistive devices or personal assistance, and in accordance with the following scale (where xxx stands for the second-level domain number):

- xxx.0 NO difficulty
- xxx.1 MILD difficulty
- xxx.2 MODERATE difficulty
- xxx.3 SEVERE difficulty
- xxx.4 COMPLETE difficulty
- xxx.8 not specified
- xxx.9 not applicable

### When to use the performance qualifier and the capacity qualifier

Either qualifier may be used for each of the categories listed. But the information conveyed in each case is different. When both qualifiers are used, the result is an aggregation of two constructs, i.e.:



If only one qualifier is used, then the unused space should **not** be filled with .8 or .9, but left blank, since both of these are true assessment values and would imply that the qualifier is being used.

### *Examples of the application of the two qualifiers*

#### **d4500 Walking short distances**

For the *performance qualifier*, this domain refers to getting around on foot, in the person's current environment, such as on different surfaces and conditions, with the use of a cane, walker, or other assistive technology, for distances less than 1 km. For example, the performance of a person who lost his leg in a work-related accident and since then has used a cane but faces moderate difficulties in walking around because the sidewalks in the neighbourhood are very steep and have a very slippery surface can be coded:

#### **d4500.3 \_ moderate restriction in performance of walking short distances**

For the *capacity qualifier*, this domain refers to the an individual's ability to walk around without assistance. In order to neutralize the varying impact of different environments, the ability may be assessed in a "standardized" environment. This standardized environment may be: (a) an actual environment commonly used for capacity assessment in test settings; or (b) in cases where this is not possible, an assumed environment which can be thought to have a uniform impact. For example, the true ability of the above-mentioned person to walk without a cane in a standardized environment (such as one with flat and non-slippery surfaces) will be very limited. Therefore the person's capacity may be coded as follows:

#### **d4500.\_ 3 severe capacity limitation in walking short distances**

Users who wish to specify the current or standardized environment while using the performance or capacity qualifier should use the Environmental Factors classification (see coding convention 3 for Environmental Factors in section 3 above).

## **4.4 Coding environmental factors**

### *Definitions*

**Environmental Factors** make up the physical, social and attitudinal environment in which people live and conduct their lives.

### *Use of Environmental Factors*

Environmental Factors is a component of Part 2 (Contextual Factors) of the classification. Environmental factors must be considered for each component of functioning and coded according to one of the three conventions described in section 3 above.

Environmental factors are to be coded from the perspective of the person whose situation is being described. For example, kerb cuts without textured paving may be coded as a facilitator for a wheelchair user but as a barrier for a blind person.

The qualifier indicates the extent to which a factor is a facilitator or a barrier. There are several reasons why an environmental factor may be a facilitator or a

barrier, and to what extent. For facilitators, the coder should keep in mind issues such as the accessibility of a resource, and whether access is dependable or variable, of good or poor quality and so on. In the case of barriers, it might be relevant how often a factor hinders the person, whether the hindrance is great or small, or avoidable or not. It should also be kept in mind that an environmental factor can be a barrier either because of its presence (for example, negative attitudes towards people with disabilities) or its absence (for example, the unavailability of a needed service). The effects that environmental factors have on the lives of people with health conditions are varied and complex, and it is hoped that future research will lead to a better understanding of this interaction and, possibly, show the usefulness of a second qualifier for these factors.

In some instances, a diverse collection of environmental factors is summarized with a single term, such as poverty, development, rural or urban setting, or social capital. These summary terms are not themselves found in the classification. Rather, the coder should separate the constituent factors and code these. Once again, further research is required to determine whether there are clear and consistent sets of environmental factors that make up each of these summary terms.

*First qualifier*

The following is the negative and positive scale that denotes the extent to which an environmental factor acts as a barrier or a facilitator. Using a point alone denotes a barrier, whereas using the + sign instead denotes a facilitator, as indicated below:

xxx.0 NO barrier	xxx+0 NO facilitator
xxx.1 MILD barrier	xxx+1 MILD facilitator
xxx.2 MODERATE barrier	xxx+2 MODERATE facilitator
xxx.3 SEVERE barrier	xxx+3 SUBSTANTIAL facilitator
xxx.4 COMPLETE barrier	xxx+4 COMPLETE facilitator
xxx.8 barrier, not specified	xxx+8 facilitator, not specified
xxx.9 not applicable	xxx.9 not applicable



## Annex 3

# Possible uses of the Activities and Participation list

The Activities and Participation component is a neutral list of domains indicating various actions and life areas. Each domain contains categories at different levels ordered from general to detailed (e.g. the domain of Chapter 4 Mobility, contains categories such as d450 Walking and under it the more specific item, d4500 Walking short distances.) The list of activity and participation domains covers the full range of functioning, which can be coded at both the individual and societal levels.

As indicated in the Introduction, this list can be used in different ways to indicate the specific notions of "Activities" and "Participation", which are defined in ICF as follows:

In the context of health:

**Activity** is the execution of a task or action by an individual.

**Participation** is involvement in a life situation.

There are four alternative options for structuring the relationship between activities (a) and participation (p) in terms of the domain list:

- (1) Distinct sets of activities domains and participation domains (no overlap)

A certain set of categories is coded only as activities (i.e. tasks or actions that an individual does) and another set only as participation (i.e. involvement in life situations). The two sets, therefore, are mutually exclusive.

In this option, the sets of activity categories and participation categories is determined by the user. Each category is either an activity or a participation item, but not both. For example, the domains may be divided as follows:

a1 Learning and applying knowledge  
a2 General tasks and demands  
a3 Communication  
a4 Mobility

p5 Self-care  
p6 Domestic life  
p7 Interpersonal interactions  
p8 Major life areas  
p9 Community, social and civic life



Coding for this structure

- a category code. q<sub>p</sub> q<sub>c</sub> (a category deemed an activities item)
- p category code. q<sub>p</sub> q<sub>c</sub> (a category deemed a participation item)

Where q<sub>p</sub> = the performance qualifier and q<sub>c</sub> = the capacity qualifier. If the performance qualifier is used, the category, whether denoted as an activities or a participation item, is interpreted in terms of the performance construct; if the capacity qualifier is used, a capacity construct is used to interpret the category, again whether denoted as an activities or a participation item.

In this way option (1) provides the full information matrix without any redundancy or overlap.

(2) Partial overlap between sets of activities and participation domains

In this alternative, a set of categories may be interpreted as both activities and participation items; that is, the same category is thought to be open to an individual (i.e. as a task or action that an individual does) and a societal (i.e. involvement in a life situation) interpretation.

For example:

- |                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a1 Learning and applying knowledge |                                     |
| a2 General tasks and demands       |                                     |
| a3 Communication                   | p3 Communication                    |
| a4 Mobility                        | p4 Mobility                         |
| a5 Self-care                       | p5 Self-care                        |
| a6 Domestic life                   | p6 Domestic life                    |
|                                    | p7 Interpersonal interactions       |
|                                    | p8 Major life areas                 |
|                                    | p9 Community, social and civic life |

Coding for this structure

There is a restriction on how categories can be coded for this structure. It cannot be possible for a category within the “overlap” to have different values for the same qualifier (either the first qualifier for performance or the second qualifier for capacity), e.g.:

- |                 |    |                 |
|-----------------|----|-----------------|
| a category. 1 _ | or | a category. _ 1 |
| p category. 2   |    | p category. _ 2 |

A user who chooses this option believes that codes in the overlapping categories may mean different things when they are coded in activities and not in participation, and vice versa. However, one single code has to be entered into the information matrix for the specified qualifier column.

(3) Detailed categories as activities and broad categories as participation, with or without overlap

Another approach to applying activities and participation definitions to the domains restricts participation to the more general or broader categories within a domain (e.g. first-level categories such as chapter headings) and deems the more detailed categories to be activities (e.g. third- or fourth-level categories). This approach separates categories within some or all domains in terms of the broad versus detailed distinction. The user may deem some domains to be entirely (i.e. at all levels of detail) activities or entirely participation.

For example, d4550 Crawling may be construed as an activity while d455 Moving around may be construed as participation.

There are two possible ways of handling this approach: (a) there is no “overlap”, i.e. if an item is an activity it is not participation; or (b) there may be an overlap, since some users may use the whole list for activities and only broad titles for participation.

*Coding for this structure*

Similar to option (1) or option (2).

(4) Use of the same domains for both activities and participation with total overlap of domains

In this option, all domains in the Activities and Participation list can be viewed as both activities and participation. Every category can be interpreted as individual functioning (activity) as well as societal functioning (participation).

For example, d330 Speaking can be seen both as an activity and as participation. A person with missing vocal cords can speak with the use of an assistive device. According to the assessments using capacity and performance qualifiers, this person has:

<i>First qualifier</i>	
Moderate difficulty in performance (perhaps because of contextual factors such as personal stress or other peoples’ attitudes)	→ 2
<i>Second qualifier</i>	
Severe difficulty in capacity without assistive device	→ 3
<i>Third qualifier</i>	
Mild difficulty in capacity with assistive device	→ 1

According to the ICF information matrix this person's situation should be coded as:

d330.231

According to option (4) this can also be coded as:

a330.231

p330.2

In option (4), when both performance and capacity qualifiers are used, there are two values for the same cell in the ICF information matrix: one for activities and one for participation. If these values are the same, then there is no conflict, only redundancy. However, in the case of differing values, users must develop a decision rule to code for the information matrix, since the official WHO coding style is this:

d category q<sub>p</sub> q<sub>c</sub>

One possible way to overcome this redundancy may be to consider the capacity qualifier as activity and the performance qualifier as participation.

Another possibility is to develop additional qualifiers for participation that capture "involvement in life situations".

It is expected that with the continued use of ICF and the generation of empirical data, evidence will become available as to which of the above options are preferred by different users of the classification. Empirical research will also lead to a clearer operationalization of the notions of activities and participation. Data on how these notions are used in different settings, in different countries and for different purposes can be generated and will then inform further revisions to the scheme.



## Annex 4

### Case examples

The examples below describe applications of ICF concepts to various cases. It is hoped that they will assist users to understand the intent and application of the basic classification concepts and constructs. For further details, please refer to WHO training manuals and courses.

#### Impairment leading to no limitation in capacity and no problem in performance

A child is born with a fingernail missing. This malformation is an impairment of structure, but does not interfere with the function of the child's hand or what the child can do with that hand, so there is no limitation in the child's capacity. Similarly, there may be no performance problem – such as playing with other children without being teased or excluded from play –because of this malformation. The child, therefore, has no capacity limitations or problems in performance.

#### Impairment leading to no limitation in capacity but to problems in performance

A diabetic child has an impairment of function: the pancreas does not function adequately to produce insulin. Diabetes can be controlled by medication, namely insulin. When the body functions (insulin levels) are under control, there are no limitations in capacity associated with the impairment. However, the child with diabetes is likely to experience a performance problem in socializing with friends or peers when eating is involved, since the child is required to restrict sugar intake. The lack of appropriate food would create a barrier. Therefore, the child would have a lack of involvement in socialisation in the current environment unless steps were taken to ensure that appropriate food was provided, in spite of no limitations in capacity.

Another example is that of an individual with vitiligo on the face but no other physical complaints. This cosmetic problem produces no limitations in capacity. However, the individual may live in a setting where vitiligo is mistaken for leprosy and so considered contagious. In the person's current environment, therefore, this negative attitude is an environmental barrier that leads to significant performance problems in interpersonal interactions.



## **Impairment leading to limitations in capacity and – depending on circumstance – to problems or no problems in performance**

A significant variation in intellectual development is a mental impairment. This may lead to some limitation in a variety of the person's capacities. Environmental factors, however, may affect the extent of the individual's performance in different life domains. For example, a child with this mental impairment might experience little disadvantage in an environment where expectations are not high for the general population and where the child is given an array of simple, repetitive but necessary tasks to accomplish. In this environment the child will perform well in different life situations.

A similar child growing up in an environment of competition and high scholastic expectation might experience more problems in performance in various life situations compared to the first child.

This case example highlights two issues. The first is that the population norm or standard against which an individual's functioning is compared must be appropriate to the actual current environment. The second is that the presence or absence of environmental factors may have either a facilitating or a hindering impact on that functioning.

## **Former impairment leading to no limitations in capacity but still causing problems in performance**

An individual who has recovered from an acute psychotic episode, but who bears the stigma of having been a "mental patient", may experience problems in performance in the domain of employment or interpersonal interactions, because of negative attitudes of people in his or her environment. The person's involvement in employment and social life is, therefore, restricted.

## **Different impairments and limitations in capacity leading to similar problems in performance**

An individual may not be hired for a job because the extent of his or her impairment (quadriplegia) is seen to preclude performing some job requirements (e.g. using a computer with a manual keyboard). The workplace does not have the necessary adaptations to facilitate the person's performance of these job requirements (e.g. voice recognition software that replaces the manual keyboard).

Another individual with less severe quadriplegia may have the capacity to do the necessary job tasks, but may not be hired because the quota for hiring people with disabilities has been filled.

A third individual, who is capable of performing the required job activities, may not be hired because he or she has an activity limitation that is alleviated through use of a wheelchair, although the job site is not accessible to wheelchairs.

Lastly, an individual using a wheelchair may be hired for the job, and has the capacity to do the job tasks and in fact does perform them in the work context. None the less, this individual may still have problems in performing in domains of interpersonal interactions with co-workers, because access to work-related rest areas is not available. This problem of performance in socializing at the place of employment may prevent access to job advancement opportunities.

All four individuals experience performance problems in the domain of employment because of different environmental factors interacting with their health condition or impairment. For the first individual, the environmental barriers include lack of accommodation at the workplace and probably negative attitudes. The second individual is faced with negative attitudes about employment of disabled people. The third person faces lack of accessibility of the built environment and the last person faces negative attitudes about disability generally.

### **Suspected impairment leading to marked problems in performance without limitations in capacity**

An individual has been working with patients who have AIDS. This individual is otherwise healthy but has to undergo periodic testing for HIV. He has no capacity limitations. Despite this, people who know him socially suspect he may have acquired the virus and so avoid him. This leads to significant problems in the person's performance in the domain of social interactions and community, social and civic life. His involvement is restricted because of negative attitudes adopted by the people in his environment.

### **Impairments currently not classified in ICF leading to problems in performance**

An individual has a mother who died of breast cancer. She is 45 years old and was voluntarily screened recently and found to carry the genetic code that puts her at risk for breast cancer. She has no problems in body function or structure, or limitation in capacities, but is denied health insurance by her insurance company because of her increased risk for breast cancer. Her involvement in the domain of looking after her health is restricted because of the policy of the health insurance company.

### *Additional examples*

A 10-year-old boy is referred to a speech therapist with the referral diagnosis “stuttering”. During the examination problems are found in discontinuities in speech, inter- and intra-verbal accelerations, problems in timing of speech movements and inadequate speech rhythm (impairments). There are problems at school with reading aloud and with conversation (capacity limitations). During group discussions he does not take any initiative to engage in the discussions although he would like to (performance problem in the domain of conversing with many people). This boy's involvement in conversation is limited when in a group because of societal norms and practices concerning the orderly unfolding of conversations.

A 40-year-old woman with a whiplash injury four months earlier complains about pain in the neck, severe headache, dizziness, reduced muscle power and anxiety (impairments). Her ability to walk, cook, clean, handle a computer and drive a car are limited (limitations in capacity). In consultation with her physician it was mutually agreed to wait till the problems are reduced before she can return to her old full-time fixed-hours job (problems in performance in the domain of employment). If the workplace policies in her current environment allowed for flexible work hours, taking time off when her symptoms were particularly bad, and allowed her to work from home, her involvement in the domain of employment would improve.



## Annex 5

# ICF and people with disabilities

The ICF revision process has, since its inception, benefited from the input of people with disabilities and organizations of disabled persons. Disabled Peoples' International in particular has contributed its time and energies to the process of revision, and ICF reflects this important input.

WHO recognizes the importance of the full participation of persons with disabilities and their organizations in the revision of a classification of functioning and disability. As a classification, ICF will serve as the basis for both the assessment and measurement of disability in many scientific, clinical, administrative and social policy contexts. As such, it is a matter of concern that ICF not be misused in ways that are detrimental to the interests of persons with disabilities (see Ethical Guidelines in Annex 6).

In particular, WHO recognizes that the very terms used in the classification can, despite the best efforts of all, be stigmatizing and labelling. In response to this concern, the decision was made early in the process to drop the term "handicap" entirely – owing to its pejorative connotations in English – and not to use the term "disability" as the name of a component, but to keep it as the overall, umbrella term.

There remains, however, the difficult question of how best to refer to individuals who experience some degree of functional limitation or restriction. ICF uses the term "disability" to denote a multidimensional phenomenon resulting from the interaction between people and their physical and social environment. For a variety of reasons, when referring to individuals, some prefer to use the term "people with disabilities" while others prefer "disabled people". In the light of this divergence, there is no universal practice for WHO to adopt, and it is not appropriate for ICF rigidly to adopt one rather than another approach. Instead, WHO confirms the important principle that people have the right to be called what they choose.

It is important to stress, moreover, that ICF is not a classification of people at all. It is a classification of people's health characteristics within the context of their individual life situations and environmental impacts. It is the interaction of the health characteristics and the contextual factors that produces disability. This being so, individuals must not be reduced to, or characterized solely in terms of, their impairments, activity limitations, or participation restrictions. For example, instead of referring to a "mentally handicapped person", the classification uses the phrase "person with a problem in learning". ICF ensures this by avoiding any reference to a person by means of a health condition or disability term, and by using neutral, if not positive, and concrete language throughout.

To further address the legitimate concern of systematic labelling of people, the categories in ICF are expressed in a neutral way to avoid depreciation,



stigmatization and inappropriate connotations. This approach, however, brings with it the problem of what might be called the “sanitation of terms”. The negative attributes of one’s health condition and how other people react to it are independent of the terms used to define the condition. Whatever disability is called, it exists irrespective of labels. The problem is not only an issue of language but also, and mainly, an issue of the attitudes of other individuals and society towards disability. What is needed is correct content and usage of terms and classification.

WHO is committed to continuing efforts to ensure that persons with disabilities are empowered by classification and assessment, and not disempowered or discriminated against.

It is hoped that disabled people themselves will contribute to the use and development of ICF in all sectors. As researchers, managers and policy-makers, disabled people will help to develop protocols and tools that are grounded in the ICF classifications. ICF also serves as a potentially powerful tool for evidence-based advocacy. It provides reliable and comparable data to make the case for change. The political notion that disability is as much the result of environmental barriers as it is of health conditions or impairments must be transformed, first into a research agenda and then into valid and reliable evidence. This evidence can bring genuine social change for persons with disabilities around the world.

Disability advocacy can also be enhanced by using ICF. As the primary goal of advocacy is to identify interventions that can improve levels of participation of people with disabilities, ICF can assist in identifying where the principal “problem” of disability lies, whether it is in the environment by way of a barrier or the absence of a facilitator, the limited capacity of the individual himself or herself, or some combination of factors. By means of this clarification, interventions can be appropriately targeted and their effects on levels of participation monitored and measured. In this way, concrete and evidence-driven objectives can be achieved and the overall goals of disability advocacy furthered.

## Annex 6

# Ethical guidelines for the use of ICF

Every scientific tool can be misused and abused. It would be naive to believe that a classification system such as ICF will never be used in ways that are harmful to people. As explained in Appendix 5, the process of the revision of ICIDH has included persons with disabilities and their advocacy organizations from the beginning. Their input has led to substantive changes in the terminology, content and structure of ICF. This annex sets out some basic guidelines for the ethical use of ICF. It is obvious that no set of guidelines can anticipate all forms of misuse of a classification or other scientific tool, or for that matter, that guidelines alone can prevent misuse. This document is no exception. It is hoped that attention to the provisions that follow will reduce the risk that ICF will be used in ways that are disrespectful and harmful to people with disabilities.

### Respect and confidentiality

- (1) ICF should always be used so as to respect the inherent value and autonomy of individual persons.
- (2) ICF should never be used to label people or otherwise identify them solely in terms of one or more disability categories.
- (3) In clinical settings, ICF should always be used with the full knowledge, cooperation, and consent of the persons whose levels of functioning are being classified. If limitations of an individual's cognitive capacity preclude this involvement, the individual's advocate should be an active participant.
- (4) The information coded using ICF should be viewed as personal information and subject to recognized rules of confidentiality appropriate for the manner in which the data will be used.

### Clinical use of ICF

- (5) Wherever possible, the clinician should explain to the individual or the individual's advocate the purpose of the use of ICF and invite questions about the appropriateness of using it to classify the person's levels of functioning.
- (6) Wherever possible, the person whose level of functioning is being classified (or the person's advocate) should have the opportunity to participate, and in particular to challenge or affirm the appropriateness of the category being used and the assessment assigned.

- (7) Because the deficit being classified is a result of both a person's health condition and the physical and social context in which the person lives, ICF should be used holistically.

## **Social use of ICF information**

- (8) ICF information should be used, to the greatest extent feasible, with the collaboration of individuals to enhance their choices and their control over their lives.
- (9) ICF information should be used towards the development of social policy and political change that seeks to enhance and support the participation of individuals.
- (10) ICF, and all information derived from its use, should not be employed to deny established rights or otherwise restrict legitimate entitlements to benefits for individuals or groups.
- (11) Individuals classed together under ICF may still differ in many ways. Laws and regulations that refer to ICF classifications should not assume more homogeneity than intended and should ensure that those whose levels of functioning are being classified are considered as individuals.



## Annex 7

# Summary of the revision process

## The development of ICIDH

In 1972, WHO developed a preliminary scheme concerning the consequences of disease. Within a few months a more comprehensive approach was suggested. These suggestions were made on two important principles: distinctions were to be made between impairments and their importance, i.e. their functional and social consequences, and these various aspects or axes of the data were to be classified separately in different fields of digits. In essence, this approach consisted of a number of distinct, albeit parallel, classifications. This contrasted with the traditions of ICD, wherein multiple axes (etiology, anatomy, pathology, etc.) are integrated in a hierarchical system occupying only a single field of digits. The possibility of assimilating these proposals into a scheme compatible with the principles underlying the structure of ICD was explored. At the same time, preliminary attempts were made to systematize the terminology applied to disease consequences. These suggestions were circulated informally in 1973, and help was solicited particularly from groups with a special concern in rehabilitation.

Separate classifications for impairments and handicaps were circulated in 1974 and discussions continued. Comments were collated and definitive proposals were developed. These were submitted for consideration by the International Conference for the Ninth Revision of the International Classification of Diseases in October 1975. Having considered the classifications, the Conference recommended its publication for trial purposes. In May 1976, the Twenty-ninth World Health Assembly took note of this recommendation and adopted resolution WHA29.35, in which it approved the publication, for trial purposes, of the supplementary classification of impairments and handicaps as a supplement to, but not as an integral part of, the International Classification of Diseases. Consequently, the first edition of ICIDH was published in 1980. In 1993, it was reprinted with an additional foreword.

## Initial steps in the revision of ICIDH

In 1993, it was decided to begin a process of revision of ICIDH. The desiderata for the revised version, known provisionally as ICIDH-2, were as follows:

- it should serve the multiple purposes required by different countries, sectors and health care disciplines;
- it should be simple enough to be seen by practitioners as a meaningful description of consequences of health conditions;



- it should be useful for practice - i.e. identifying health care needs and tailoring intervention programmes (e.g. prevention, rehabilitation, social actions);
- it should give a coherent view of the processes involved in the consequences of health conditions such that the disablement process, and not just the dimensions of diseases/disorders, could be objectively assessed, recorded and responded to;
- it should be sensitive to cultural variations (be translatable, and be applicable in different cultures and health care systems);
- it should be usable in a complementary way with the WHO family of classifications.

Originally, the French Collaborating Centre was given the task of making a proposal on the Impairments section and on language, speech and sensory aspects. The Dutch Collaborating Centre was to suggest a revision of the Disability and locomotor aspects of the Classification and prepare a review of the literature, while the North American Collaborating Centre was to put forward proposals for the Handicap section. In addition, two task forces were to present proposals on mental health aspects and children's issues respectively. Progress was made at a ICIDH-2 revision meeting held in Geneva in 1996, an Alpha draft was collated incorporating the different proposals, and initial pilot testing was conducted. It was decided at the 1996 meeting that each collaborating centre and task force would now be concerned with the draft as a whole and no longer with their former individual areas for revision. From May 1996 to February 1997, the Alpha draft was circulated among collaborating centres and task forces, and comments and suggestions were collated at WHO headquarters. A list of basic questions, setting out the main issues related to the revision, was also circulated in order to facilitate the collection of comments.

The following topics were considered during the process of revision:

- The three-level classification, i.e. Impairments, Disabilities and Handicaps, had been useful and should remain. The inclusion of contextual/ environmental factors should be considered, although most proposals remained at the stage of theoretical development and empirical testing.
- Interrelations between I/D/H and an adequate relationship between them had been an issue for discussion. Many criticisms had pointed to the causal model underlying the 1980 version of ICIDH, the lack of change over time, and the unidirectional flow from impairment to disability to handicap. The revision process had suggested alternative graphic representations.
- ICIDH-1980 was difficult to use. Simplification for use was deemed necessary: the revision should tend towards simplification rather than towards the addition of detail.
- Contextual factors (external – environmental factors/ internal–personal factors): These factors, which were major components of the handicap process (as conceptualized in the 1980 version of ICIDH), should be

developed as additional schemes within the ICIDH. However, since social and physical factors in the environment and their relationship to Impairments, Disabilities and Handicaps were strongly culture-bound, they should not be a separate dimension within ICIDH. Nevertheless, it was considered that classifications of environmental factors might prove useful in the analysis of national situations and in the development of solutions at the national level.

- Impairments should reflect advances in knowledge of basic biological mechanisms.
- Cultural applicability and universality should be a major aim.
- Development of training and presentation materials was also a major aim of the revision process.

## ICIDH-2 Beta-1 and Beta-2 drafts

In March 1997, a Beta-1 draft was produced which integrated the suggestions collected over the previous years. This draft was presented to the ICIDH revision meeting in April 1997. After incorporation of the meeting's decisions the ICIDH-2 Beta-1 draft was issued for field trials in June 1997. Based on all the data and other feedback collected as part of the Beta-1 field trials, a Beta-2 draft was written between January and April 1999. The resulting draft was presented and discussed at the annual meeting on ICIDH-2 in London in April 1999. After incorporation of the meeting's decisions, the Beta-2 draft was printed and issued for field trials in July 1999.

## Field trials

The field trials of the Beta-1 draft were conducted from June 1997 to December 1998, and the Beta-2 field trials from July 1999 to September 2000.

The field tests elicited the widest possible participation from WHO Member States and across different disciplines, including sectors such as health insurance, social security, labour, education, and other groups engaged in classifying health conditions (using the International Classification of Diseases, the Nurses' Classification, and the International Standard Classification of Education-ISCED). The aim was to reach a consensus, through clear definitions that were operational. The field trials constituted a continuous process of development, consultation, feedback, updating and testing.

The following studies were conducted as a part of the Beta-1 and Beta-2 field trials:

- translation and linguistic evaluation;
- item evaluation;
- responses to basic question by consensus conferences and individuals;

- feedback from organizations and individuals;
- options testing;
- feasibility and reliability in case evaluations (live or case summaries);
- others (e.g. focus group studies)

The testing focused on cross-cultural and multisectoral issues. More than 50 countries and 1800 experts were involved in the field tests, which have been reported separately.

## ICIDH-2 Prefinal version

On the basis of Beta-2 field trial data and in consultation with collaborating centres and the WHO Committee of Experts on Measurement and Classification, the Prefinal version of ICIDH-2 was drafted in October 2000. This draft was presented to a revision meeting in November 2000. Following incorporation of the meeting's recommendations the ICIDH-2 Prefinal version (December 2000) was submitted to the WHO Executive Board in January 2001. The final draft of ICIDH-2 was then presented to the Fifty-fourth World Health Assembly in May 2001.

## Endorsement of the final version

After discussion of the final draft, with the title International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health, the Health Assembly endorsed the new classification in resolution WHA54.21 of 22 May 2001. The resolution reads as follows:

The Fifty-fourth World Health Assembly,

1. ENDORSES the second edition of the International Classification of Impairments, Disabilities and Handicaps (ICIDH), with the title International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health, henceforth referred to in short as ICF;
2. URGES Member States to use the ICF in their research, surveillance and reporting as appropriate, taking into account specific situations in Member States and, in particular, in view of possible future revisions;
3. REQUESTS the Director-General to provide support to Member States, at their request, in making use of ICF.



## Annex 8

### Future directions for ICF

Use of ICF will largely depend on its practical utility: the extent to which it can serve as a measure of health service performance through indicators based on consumer outcomes, and the degree to which it is applicable across cultures so that international comparisons can be made to identify needs and resources for planning and research. ICF is not directly a political tool. Its use may, however, contribute positive input to policy determination by providing information to help establish health policy, promote equal opportunities for all people, and support the fight against discrimination based on disability.

#### Versions of ICF

In view of the differing needs of different types of users, ICF will be presented in multiple formats and versions:

##### *Main classification*

The two parts and their components in ICF are presented in two versions in order to meet the needs of different users for varying levels of detail:

The first version is a *full (detailed) version* which provides all levels of classification and allows for 9999 categories per component. However, a much smaller number of them have been used. The full version categories can be aggregated into the short version when summary information is required.

The second version is a *short (concise) version* which gives two levels of categories for each component and domain. Definitions of these terms, inclusions and exclusions are also given.

##### *Specific adaptations*

- (a) **Clinical use versions:** These versions will depend on the use of ICF in different clinical application fields (e.g. occupational therapy). They will be based on the main volume for coding and terminology; however, they will provide further detailed information such as guidelines for assessment and clinical descriptions. They can also be rearranged for specific disciplines (e.g. rehabilitation, mental health).
- (b) **Research versions:** In a similar way to the clinical versions, these versions will respond to specific research needs and will provide precise and operational definitions to assess conditions.



## Future work

Given the multitude of uses and needs for ICF, it is important to note that WHO and its collaborating centres are conducting additional work to meet those needs.

ICF is owned by all its users. It is the only such tool accepted on an international basis. It aims to obtain better information on disability phenomena and functioning and build a broad international consensus. To achieve recognition of ICF by various national and international communities, WHO has made every effort to ensure that it is user-friendly and compatible with standardization processes such as those laid down by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO).

The possible future directions for development and application of ICF can be summarized as follows:

- promoting use of ICF at country level for the development of national databases;
- establishing an international data set and a framework to permit international comparisons;
- identification of algorithms for eligibility for social benefits and pensions;
- study of disability and functioning of family members (e.g. a study of third-party disability due to the health condition of significant others);
- development of a Personal Factors component;
- development of precise operational definitions of categories for research purposes;
- development of assessment instruments for identification and measurement;<sup>23</sup>
- providing practical applications by means of computerization and case-recording forms;
- establishing links with quality-of-life concepts and the measurement of subjective well-being;<sup>24</sup>
- research into treatment or intervention matching;

---

<sup>23</sup> Assessment instruments linked to ICF are being developed by WHO with a view to applicability in different cultures. They are being tested for reliability and validity. Assessment instruments will take three forms: a brief version for screening/case-finding purposes; a version for daily use by care-givers; and a long version for detailed research purposes. They will be available from WHO.

<sup>24</sup> Links with quality of life: It is important that there is conceptual compatibility between "quality of life" and disability constructs. Quality of life, however, deals with what people "feel" about their health condition or its consequences; hence it is a construct of "subjective well-being". On the other hand, disease/disability constructs refer to objective and exteriorized signs of the individual.

- promoting use in scientific studies for comparison between different health conditions;
- development of training materials on the use of ICF;
- creation of ICF training and reference centres worldwide.
- further research on environmental factors to provide the necessary detail for use in describing both the standardized and current environment.

## Annex 9

7

## Suggested ICF Data requirements for ideal and minimal health information systems or surveys

Body Functions and Structures	Chapter and code		Classification block or category
Vision	2	b210–b220	Seeing and related functions
Hearing	2	b230–b240	Hearing and vestibular functions
Speech	3	b310–b340	Voice and speech functions
Digestion	5	b510–b535	Functions of the digestive system
Bodily excretion	6	b610–b630	Urinary functions
Fertility	6	b640–b670	Genital and reproductive functions
Sexual activity	6	b640	Genital and reproductive health
Skin and disfigurement	8	b810–b830	Skin and related structures
Breathing	4	b440–b460	Functions of the respiratory system
Pain	2	b280	Pain
Affect	1	b152–b180	Specific mental functions
Sleep	1	b134	Global mental functions
Energy/vitality	1	b130	Global mental functions
Cognition	1	b140, b144, b164	Attention, memory and higher-level cognitive functions
<b>Activities and Participation</b>			
Communication	3	d310–d345	Communication receiving – producing
Mobility	4	d450–d465	Walking and moving
Dexterity	4	d430–d445	Carrying, moving and handling objects
Self-care	5	d510–d570	Self-care
Usual activities	6 and 8		Domestic life; Major life areas
Interpersonal relations	7	d730–d770	Particular interpersonal relationships
Social functioning	9	d910–d930	Community social and civic life

---

\*Candidate items for a minimal list

## Appendix 10

### Acknowledgements

The development of ICF would not have been possible without the extensive support of many people from different parts of the world who have devoted a great amount of time and energy and organized resources within an international network. While it may not be possible to acknowledge them all here, leading centres, organizations and individuals are listed below.

#### WHO Collaborating Centres for ICF

Australia	Australian Institute of Health and Welfare, GPO Box 570, Canberra ACT 2601, Australia. Contact: Ros Madden.
Canada	Canadian Institute for Health Information, 377 Dalhousie Street, Suite 200, Ottawa, Ontario K1N9N8, Canada. Contact: Helen Whittome.
France	Centre Technique National d'Etudes et de Recherches sur les Handicaps et les Inadaptations (CTNERHI), 236 bis, rue de Tolbiac, 75013 Paris, France. Contact: Marc Maudinet.
Japan	Japan College of Social Work, 3-1-30 Takeoka, Kiyose-city, Tokyo 204-8555, Japan. Contact: Hisao Sato.
Netherlands	National Institute of Public Health and the Environment, Department of Public Health Forecasting, Antonie van Leeuwenhoeklaan 9, P.O. Box 1, 3720 BA Bilthoven, The Netherlands. Contacts: Willem M. Hirs, Marijke W. de Kleijn-de Vrankrijker.
Nordic countries	Department of Public Health and Caring Sciences, Uppsala Science Park, SE 75185 Uppsala, Sweden. Contact: Björn Smedby.
United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland	National Health System Information Authority, Coding and Classification, Woodgate, Loughborough, Leics LE11 2TG, United Kingdom. Contacts: Ann Harding, Jane Millar.
USA	National Center for Health Statistics, Room 1100, 6525 Belcrest Road, Hyattsville MD 20782, USA. Contact: Paul J. Placek.



## Task forces

International Task Force on Mental Health and Addictive, Behavioural, Cognitive, and Developmental Aspects of ICIDH, Chair: Cille Kennedy, Office of Disability, Aging and Long-Term Care Policy, Office of the Assistant Secretary for Planning and Evaluation, Department of Health and Human Services, 200 Independence Avenue, SW, Room 424E, Washington, DC 20201, USA. Co-Chair: Karen Ritchie.

Children and Youth Task Force, Chair: Rune J. Simeonsson, Professor of Education, Frank Porter Graham Child Development Center, CB # 8185, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, NC 27599-8185, USA. Co-Chair: Matilde Leonardi.

Environmental Factors Task Force, Chair: Rachel Hurst, 11 Belgrave Road, London SW1V 1RB, England. Co-Chair: Janice Miller.

## Networks

La Red de Habla Hispana en Discapacidades (The Spanish Network). Coordinator: José Luis Vázquez-Barquero, Unidad de Investigación en Psiquiatría Clínica y Social Hospital Universitario "Marques de Valdecilla", Avda. Valdecilla s/n, Santander 39008, Spain.

Council of Europe Committee of Experts for the Application of ICIDH, Council of Europe, F-67075, Strasbourg, France. Contact: Lauri Sivonen.

## Nongovernmental organizations

American Psychological Association, 750 First Street, N.E., Washington, DC 20002-4242, USA. Contacts: Geoffrey M. Reed, Jayne B. Lux.

Disabled Peoples International, 11 Belgrave Road, London SW1V 1RB, England. Contact: Rachel Hurst.

European Disability Forum, Square Ambiorix, 32 Bte 2/A, B-1000, Bruxelles, Belgium. Contact: Frank Mulcahy.

European Regional Council for the World Federation of Mental Health (ERCWFM), Blvd Clovis N.7, 1000 Brussels, Belgium. Contact: John Henderson.

Inclusion International, 13D Chemin de Levant, F-01210 Ferney-Voltaire, France. Contact: Nancy Breitenbach

Rehabilitation International, 25 E. 21st Street, New York, NY 10010, USA. Contact: Judith Hollenweger, Chairman, RI Education Commission, Institute of

Special Education, University of Zurich, Hirschengraben 48, 8001 Zurich, Switzerland.

## Consultants

A number of WHO consultants provided invaluable assistance in the revision process. They are listed below.

Elizabeth Badley

Jerome E. Bickenbach

Nick Glozier

Judith Hollenweger

Cille Kennedy

Jane Millar

Janice Miller

Jürgen Rehm

Robin Room

Angela Roberts

Michael F. Schuntermann

Robert Trotter II

David Thompson (editorial consultant)

## Translation of ICF in WHO official languages

ICF has been revised in multiple languages taking English as a working language only. Translation and linguistic analysis have been integral part of the revision process. The following WHO collaborators have lead the translation, linguistic analyses, editorial review the WHO official languages. Other translations could be found on the WHO-web site: <http://www.who.int/classification/icf>.

### *Arabic*

Translation and linguistic analysis:

Adel Chaker, Ridha Limem, Najeh Daly, Hayet Baachaoui, Amor Haji, Mohamed Daly, Jamil Taktak, Saïda Douki

Editorial review carried out by WHO/EMRO;

Kassem Sara, M. Haytham Al Khayat, Abdel Aziz Saleh

### *Chinese*

Translation and linguistic analysis:

Qiu Zhuoying (co-ordinator), Hong Dong, Zhao Shuying, Li Jing, Zhang Aimin, Wu Xianguang, Zhou Xiaonan

Editorial review carried out by WHO Collaborating Centre in China and WHO/WPRO:

Dong Jingwu, Zhou Xiaonan and Y.C. Chong

### *French*

Translation and linguistic analysis carried out by WHO Geneva:

Pierre Lewalle

Editorial review carried out by WHO Collaborating Centres in France and Canada:

Catherine Barral and Janice Miller

### *Russian*

Translation and linguistic analysis:

G. Shostka (Co-ordinator), Vladimir Y. Ryasnyansky, Alexander V. Kvashin, Sergey A. Matveev, Aleksey A. Galianov

Editorial review carried out by WHO Collaborating Centre in Russia:

Vladimir K. Ovcharov

### *Spanish*

Translation, linguistic analysis, editorial review by the Collaborating Centre in Spain in collaboration with La Red de Habla Hispana en Discapacidades (The Spanish Network) and WHO/PAHO:

J. L. Vázquez-Barquero (Co-ordinator), Ana Díez Ruiz, Luis Gaité Pindado, Ana Gómez Silió, Sara Herrera Castanedo, Marta Uriarte Ituiño, Elena Vázquez Bourgon Armando Vásquez, María del Consuelo Crespo, Ana María Fossatti Pons, Benjamín Vicente, Pedro Rioseco, Sergio Aguilar Gaxiola, Carmen Lara Muñoz, María Elena Medina Mora, María Esther Araujo Bazán, Carlos Castillo-Salgado, Roberto Becker, Margaret Hazlewood

## Individual participants in the revision process

### Argentina

Liliana Lissi  
Martha Adela Mazas  
Miguela Pico  
Ignacio Saenz

### Armenia

Armen Sargsyan

### Australia

Gavin Andrews  
Robyne Burridge  
Ching Choi  
Prem K. Chopra  
Jeremy Couper  
Elisabeth Davis  
Maree Dyson  
Rhonda Galbally  
Louise Golley  
Tim Griffin  
Simon Haskell  
Angela Hewson  
Tracie Hogan  
Richard Madden  
Ros Madden  
Helen McAuley  
Trevor Parmenter  
Mark Pattison  
Tony M. Pinzone  
Kate Senior  
Catherine Sykes  
John Taplin  
John Walsh

### Austria

Gerhard S. Barolin  
Klemens Fheodoroff  
Christiane Meyer-Bornsen

### Belgium

Françoise Jan  
Catherine Mollman  
J. Stevens  
A. Tricot

### Brazil

Cassia Maria Buchalla  
E. d'Arrigo Busnello  
Ricardo Halpern  
Fabio Gomes  
Ruy Laurenti

### Canada

Hugh Anton  
J. Arboleda-Florez  
Denise Avard  
Elizabeth Badley  
Caroline Bergeron

Hélène Bergeron  
Jerome E. Bickenbach  
Andra Blanchet  
Maurice Blouin  
Mario Bolduc (deceased)  
Lucie Brosseau  
T.S. Callanan  
Lindsay Campbell  
Anne Carswell  
Jacques Cats  
L.S. Cherry  
René Cloutier  
Albert Cook  
Jacques Côté  
Marcel Côté  
Cheryl Cott  
Aileen Davis  
Henry Enns  
Gail Finkel  
Christine Fitzgerald  
Patrick Fougeyrollas  
Adele Furrie  
Linda Garcia  
Yhetta Gold  
Betty Havens  
Anne Hébert  
Peter Henderson  
Lynn Jongbloed  
Faith Kaplan  
Ronald Kaplan  
Lee Kirby  
Catherine Lachance  
Jocelyne Lacroix  
Renée Langlois  
Mary Law  
Lucie Lemieux-Brassard  
Annette Majnemer  
Rose Martini  
Raoul Martin-Blouin  
Mary Ann McColl  
Joan McComas  
Barbara McElgunn  
Janice Miller  
Louise Ogilvie  
Luc Noreau  
Diane Richler  
Laurie Ringaert  
Kathia Roy  
Patricia Sisco  
Denise Smith  
Ginette St Michel  
Debra Stewart  
Luz Elvira Vallejo  
Echeverri  
Michael Wolfson  
Sharon Wood-Dauphinee  
Nancy Young  
Peter Wass

Colleen Watters

### Chile

Ricardo Araya  
Alejandra Faulbaum  
Luis Flores  
Roxane Moncayo de  
Bremont  
Pedro Rioseco  
Benjamin Vicente

### China

Zhang Aimin  
Mary Chu Manlai  
Hong Dong  
Leung Kwokfai  
Karen Ngai Ling  
Wu Xuanguong  
Qiu Zhuoying  
Zhao Shuying  
Li Jing  
Tang Xiaoquan  
Li Jianjun  
Ding Buotan  
Zhuo Dahong  
Nan Dengkun  
Zhou Xiaonan

### Colombia

Martha Aristabal Gomez

### Côte d'Ivoire

B. Claver

### Croatia

Ana Bobinac-Georgievski

### Cuba

Pedro Valdés Sosa  
Jesús Saiz Sánchez  
Frank Morales Aguilera

### Denmark

Terkel Andersen  
Aksel Bertelsen  
Tora Haraldsen Dahl  
Marianne Engberg  
Annette Flensborg  
Ane Fink  
Per Fink  
Lise From  
Jette Haugbølle  
Stig Langvad  
Lars von der Lieth  
Kurt Møller  
Claus Vinther Nielsen  
Freddy Nielsen  
Kamilla Rothe Nissen  
Gunnar Schiøler  
Anne Sloth



Susan Tetler  
Selena Forchhammer  
Thønnings  
Eva Wæhrens  
Brita Øhlenschläger

**Ecuador**  
María del Consuelo  
Crespo  
Walter Torres Izquierdo

**Egypt**  
Mohammed El-Banna

**El Salvador**  
Jorge Alberto Alcarón  
Patricia Tovar de  
Canizalez

**Ethiopia**  
Rene Rakotobe

**Finland**  
Erkki Yrjankeikki  
Markku Leskinen  
Leena Matikka  
Matti Ojala  
Heidi Paatero  
Seija Talo  
Martti Virtanen

**France**  
Charles Aussilloux  
Bernard Azema  
Jacques Baert  
Serge Bakchine  
Catherine Barral  
Maratine Barres  
Jean-Yves Barreyre  
Jean-Paul Boissin  
François Chapireau  
Pascal Charpentier  
Alain Colvez  
Christian Corbé  
Dr. Cyran  
Michel Delcey  
Annick Deveau  
Serge Ebersold  
Camille Felder  
Claude Finkelstein  
Anne-Marie Gallot  
Pascale Gilbert  
Jacques Houver  
Marcel Jaeger  
Jacques Jonquères  
Jean-Claude Lafon  
Maryvonne Lyazid  
Joëlle Loste-Berdot  
Maryse Marrière  
Lucie Matteodo  
Marc Maudinet  
Jean-Michel Mazeaux  
Pierre Minaire(*deceased*)  
Lucien Moatti  
Bertrand Morineaux

Pierre Mormiche  
Jean-Michel Orgogozo  
Claudine Parayre  
Gérard Pavillon  
André Philip  
Nicole Quemada  
Jean-François Ravaud  
Karen Ritchie  
Jean-Marie Robine  
Isabelle Romieu  
Christian Rossignol  
Pascale Roussel  
Jacques Roustit  
Jésus Sanchez  
Marie-José Schmitt  
Jean-Luc Simon  
Lauri Sivonen  
Henri-Jacques Stiker  
Annie Triomphe  
Catherine Vaslin  
Paul Veit  
Dominique Velche  
Jean-Pierre Vignat  
Vivian Waltz

**Germany**  
Helmi Böse-Younes  
Horst Dilling  
Thomas Ewert  
Kurt Maurer  
Jürgen Rehm  
H.M. Schian  
Michael F.  
Schuntermann  
Ute Siebel  
Gerold Stucki

**Greece**  
Venos Mavreas

**Hungary**  
Lajos Kullmann

**India**  
Javed Abidi  
Samir Guha-Roy  
K.S. Jacob  
Sunanda Koli  
S. Murthy  
D.M. Naidu  
Hemraj Pal  
K. Sekar  
K.S. Shaji  
Shobha Srinath  
T.N. Srinivasan  
R. Thara

**Indonesia**  
Augustina Hendriarti  
**Iran (Islamic Republic of)**  
Mohamed M.R. Mourad

**Israel**  
Joseph Yahav

**Italy**  
Emilio Alari  
Alberto Albanese  
Renzo Andrich  
A. Andrigo  
Andrea Arrigo  
Marco Barbolini  
Maurizio Bejor  
Giulio Borgnolo  
Gabriella Borri  
Carlo Caltagirone  
Felicia Carletto  
Carla Colombo  
Francesca Cretti  
Maria Cufersin  
Marta Dao  
Mario D'Amico  
Simona Della Bianca  
Paolo Di Benedetto  
Angela Di Lorenzo  
Nadia Di Monte  
Vittoria Dieni  
Antonio Federico  
Francesco Fera  
Carlo Francescutti  
Francesca Fratello  
Franco Galletti  
Federica Galli  
Rosalia Gasparotto  
Maria Teresa Gattesco  
Alessandro Giacomazzi  
Tullio Giorgini  
Elena Giraudo  
Lucia Granzini  
Elena Grosso  
V. Groppo  
Vincenzo Guidetti  
Paolo Guzzon  
Leo Giulio Iona  
Vladimir Kasic  
Matilde Leonardi  
Fulvia Loik  
Mariangela Macan  
Alessandra Manassero  
Domenico Manco  
Santina Mancuso  
Roberto Marcovich  
Andrea Martinuzzi  
Anna Rosa Melodia  
Rosetta Mussari  
Cristiana Muzzi  
Ugo Nocentini  
Emanuela Nogherotto  
Roberta Oretti  
Lorenzo Panella  
Maria Procopio  
Leandro Provinciali  
Alda Pellegri  
Barbara Reggiori  
Marina Sala

Giorgio Sandrini  
Antonio Schindler  
Elena Sinforiani  
Stefano Schierano  
Roberto Sicurelli  
Francesco Talarico  
Gariella Tavoschi  
Cristiana Tiddia  
Walter Tomazzoli  
Corrado Tosetto  
Sergio Ujcich  
Maria Rosa Valsecchi  
Irene Vernerio

**Jamaica**  
Monica Bartley

**Japan**  
Tsunehiko Akamatsu  
Masataka Arima  
Hidenobu Fujisono  
Katsunori Fujita  
Shinichiro Furuno  
Toshiko Futaki  
Hajime Hagiwara  
Yuichiro Haruna  
Hideaki Hyoudou  
Takashi Iseda  
Atsuko Ito  
Shinya Iwasaki  
Shizuko Kawabata  
Yasu Kiryu  
Akira Kodama  
Ryousuke Matsui  
Ryo Matsutomo  
Yasushi Mochizuki  
Kazuyo Nakai  
Kenji Nakamura  
Yoshukuni Nakane  
Yukiko Nakanishi  
Toshiko Niki  
Hidetoshi Nishijima  
Shiniti Niwa  
Kensaku Ohashi  
Mari Oho  
Yayoi Okawa  
Shuhei Ota  
Fumiko Rinko  
Junko Sakano  
Yoshihiko Sasagawa  
Hisao Sato  
Yoshiyuki Suzuki  
Junko Taguchi  
Eiichi Takada  
Yuji Takagi  
Masako Tateishi  
Hikaru Tauchi  
Miyako Tazaki  
Mutsuo Torai  
Satoshi Ueda  
Kousuke Yamazaki  
Yoshio Yazaki

**Jordan**  
Abdulla S.T. El-Naggar  
Ziad Subeih

**Kuwait**  
Adnan Al Eidan  
Abdul Aziz Khalaf Karam

**Latvia**  
Valda Biedrina  
Aldis Dudins  
Lolita Cibule  
Jagis Misins  
Jautrite Karashkevica  
Mara Ozola  
Aivars Vetra

**Lebanon**  
Elie Karam

**Lithuania**  
Albinas Bagdonas

**Luxembourg**  
Charles Pull  
M. De Smedt  
Pascale Straus

**Malaysia**  
Sandiyao Sebestian

**Madagascar**  
Caromène Ratomahenina  
Raymond

**Malta**  
Joe M. Pace

**Mexico**  
Juan Alberto Alcantara  
Jorge Caraveo Anduaga  
María Eugenia Antunez  
Fernando R. Jiménez  
Albarran  
Gloria Martinez Carrera  
María-Elena Medina  
Mora  
Carmen E. Lara Muñoz

**Morocco**  
Aziza Bennani

**Netherlands**  
T. van Achterberg  
Jaap van den Berg  
A. Bloemhof  
Y.M. van der Brug  
R.D. de Boer  
J.T.P. Bonte  
J.W. Brandsma  
W.H.E. Buntinx  
J.P.M. Diederiks  
M J Driesse  
Silvia van Duuren-  
Kristen  
C.M.A. Frederiks

J.C. Gerritse  
José Geurts  
G. Gladines  
K.A. Gorter  
R.J. de Haan  
J. Halbertsma  
E.J. van der Haring  
F.G. Hellema  
C.H. Hens-Versteeg  
Y. F. Heerkens  
Y. Heijnen  
W.M. Hirs  
H. W. Hoek  
D. van Hoeken  
N. Hoeymans  
C. van Hof  
G.R.M. van Hoof  
M. Hopman-Rock  
A. Kap  
E.J. Karel  
Zoltan E. Kenessey  
M.C.O. Kersten  
M.W. de Kleijn-de  
Vrankrijker  
M.M.Y. de Klerk  
M. Koenen  
J.W. Koten  
D.W. Kraijer  
T. Kraakman  
Guuss Lankhorst  
W.A.L. van Leeuwen  
P. Looijestein  
H. Meinardi  
W. van Minnen  
A.E. Monteny  
I. Oen  
Wil Ooijendijk  
W.J. den Ouden  
R.J.M. Perenboom  
A. Persoon  
J.J. v.d. Plaats  
M. Poolmans  
F.J. Prinsze  
C.D. van Ravensberg  
K. Reynders  
K. Riet-van Hoof  
G. Roodbol  
G.L. Schut  
B. Stoelinga  
M.M.L. Swart  
L. Taal  
H. Ten Napel  
B. Treffers  
J. Verhoef  
A. Vermeer  
J.J.G.M. Verwer  
W. Vink  
M. Welle Donker  
Dirk Wiersma  
J.P. Wilken  
P.A. van Woudenberg  
P.H.M. Wouters  
P. Zanstra

**Nicaragua**

Elizabeth Aguilar  
 Angel Bonilla Serrano  
 Ivette Castillo  
 Héctor Collado  
 Hernández  
 Josefa Conrado  
 Brenda Espinoza  
 María Félix Gontol  
 Mirian Gutiérrez  
 Rosa Gutiérrez  
 Carlos Guzmán  
 Luis Jara  
 Raúl Jarquin  
 Norman Lanzas  
 José R. Leiva  
 Rafaela Marengo  
 María Alejandra  
 Martínez  
 Marlon Méndez  
 Mercedes Mendoza  
 María José Moreno  
 Alejandra Narváez  
 Amilkar Obando  
 Dulce María Olivas  
 Rosa E. Orellana  
 Yelba Rosa Orozco  
 Mirian Ortiz Alvarado  
 Amanda Pastrana  
 Marbely Picado  
 Susana Rappacioli  
 Esterlina Reyes  
 Franklin Rivera  
 Leda María Rodríguez  
 Humberto Román  
 Yemira Sequeira  
 Ivonne Tijerino  
 Ena Liz Torrez  
 Rene Urbina  
 Luis Velásquez

**Nigeria**

Sola Akinbiyi  
 John Morakinyo  
 A. O. Odejide  
 Olayinka Omigbodun

**Norway**

Kjetil Bjorlo  
 Torbjorg Hostad  
 Kjersti Vik  
 Nina Vollestad  
 Margret Grotle Soukup  
 Sigrid Ostensjo

**Pakistan**

S. Khan  
 Malik H. Mubbashar  
 Khalid Saeed

**Philippines**

L. Ladrigio-Ignacio  
 Patria Medina

**Peru**

María Esther Araujo  
 Bazon  
 Carlos Bejar Vargas  
 Carmen Cifuentes  
 Granados  
 Roxana Cock Huaman  
 Lily Pinguz Vergara  
 Adriana Rebaza Flores  
 Nelly Roncal Velazco  
 Fernando Urcia  
 Fernández  
 Rosa Zavallos Piedra

**Republic of Korea**

Ack-Seop Lee

**Romania**

Radu Vrasti

**Russia**

Vladimir N. Blondin  
 Aleksey A. Galianov  
 I.Y. Gurovich  
 Mikhail V. Korobov  
 Alexander V. Kvashin  
 Pavel A. Makkaveysky  
 Sergey A. Matveev  
 N. Mazaeva  
 Vladimir K. Ovtcharov  
 S.V. Polubinskaya  
 Anna G. Ryabokon  
 Vladimir Y. Rysnyansky  
 Alexander V. Shabrov  
 Georgy D. Shostka  
 Sergei Tsirkin  
 Yuri M. Xomarov  
 Alexander Y.  
 Zemtchenkov

**Slovenia**

Andreeja Fatur-Videtec

**South Africa**

David Boonzaier  
 Gugulethu Gule  
 Sebenzile Matsebula  
 Pam McLaren  
 Siphokazi Gcaza  
 Phillip Thompson

**Spain**

Alvaro Bilbao Bilbao  
 Encarnación Blanco  
 Egido  
 Rosa Bravo Rodriguez  
 María José Cabo  
 González  
 Marta Cano Fernández  
 Laura Cardenal Villalba  
 Ana Diez Ruiz  
 Luis Gaité Pindado  
 María García José  
 Ana Gómez Silió  
 Andres Herran Gómez

Sara Herrera Castanedo  
 Ismael Lastra Martínez  
 Marta Uriarte Ituiño  
 Elena Vázquez Bourgon  
 Antonio León Aguado  
 Díaz  
 Carmen Albeza Contreras  
 María Angeles Aldana  
 Berberana  
 Federico Alonso Trujillo  
 Carmen Alvarez Arbesú  
 Jesus Artal Simon  
 Enrique Baca Baldomero  
 Julio Bobes García  
 Antonio Bueno Alcántara  
 Tomás Castillo Arenal  
 Valentín Corces Pando  
 María Teresa Crespo  
 Abelleira  
 Roberto Cruz Hernández  
 José Armando De Vierna  
 Amigo  
 Manuel Desviat Muñoz  
 Ana María Díaz García  
 María José Eizmendi  
 Apellaniz  
 Antonio Fernández  
 Moral  
 Manuel A. Franco Martín  
 Luis Gaité Pinadado  
 María Mar García Amigo  
 José Giner-Ubago  
 Gregorio Gómez-Jarabo  
 José Manuel Gorospe  
 Arocena  
 Juana María Hernández  
 Rodríguez  
 Carmen Leal Cercos  
 Marcelino López Alvarez  
 Juan José Lopez-Ibor  
 Ana María López Trencó  
 Francisco Margallo Polo  
 Monica Martín Gil  
 Miguel Martín  
 Zurimendi  
 Manuel J. Martínez  
 Cardaña  
 Juan Carlos Miangolarra  
 Page  
 Rosa M. Montoliu Valls  
 Teresa Orihuela  
 Villameriel  
 Sandra Ortega Mera  
 Gracia Parquiana  
 Fernández  
 Rafael Peñalver  
 Castellano  
 Jesusa Pertejo  
 María Francisca Peydro  
 de Moya  
 Juan Rafael Prieto  
 Lucena



Miguel Querejeta  
González  
Miquel Roca Bennasar  
Francisco Rodríguez  
Pulido  
Luis Salvador Carulla  
María Vicenta Sánchez  
de la Cruz  
Francisco Torres  
González  
María Triquell Manuel  
José Luis Vázquez-  
Barquero  
Miguel A. Verdugo  
Alonso  
Carlos Villaro Díaz-  
Jiménez

#### Sweden

Lars Berg  
Eva Bjorck-Akesson  
Mats Granlund  
Gunnar Grimby  
Arvid Linden  
Anna Christina Nilson  
(deceased)  
Anita Nilsson  
Louise Nilunger  
Lennart Nordenfelt  
Adolf Ratzka  
Gunnar Sanner  
Olle Sjögren  
Björn Smedby  
Sonja Calais van  
Stokkom  
Gabor Tiroler

#### Switzerland

André Assimacopoulos  
Christoph Heinz  
Judith Hollenweger  
Hans Peter Rentsch  
Thomas Spuhler  
Werner Steiner  
John Strome  
John-Paul Vader  
Peter Wehrli  
Rudolf Widmer

#### Thailand

Poonpit Amatuakul  
Pattariya Jarutat  
C. Panpreecha  
K. Roongruangmaairat  
Pichai Tangsin

#### Tunisia

Adel Chaker  
Hayet Baachaoui  
A. Ben Salem  
Najeh Daly  
Saïda Douki  
Ridha Limam  
Mhalla Nejia

Jamil Taktak

#### Turkey

Ahmet Gögüs  
Elif Iyriboz  
Kultegin Ogel  
Berna Ulug

#### United Arab Emirates

Sheika Jamila Bint Al-  
Qassimi

#### United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

Simone Aspis  
Allan Colver  
Edna Conlan  
John E. Cooper  
A. John Fox  
Nick Glozier  
Ann Harding  
Rachel Hurst  
Rachel Jenkins  
Howard Meltzer  
Jane Millar  
Peter Mittler  
Martin Prince  
Angela Roberts  
G. Stewart  
Wendy Thorne  
Andrew Walker  
Brian Williams

#### United States of America

Harvey Abrams  
Myron J. Adams  
Michelle Adler  
Sergio A. Aguilor-Gaxiola  
Barbara Altman  
Alicia Amate  
William Anthony  
Susan Spear Basset  
Frederica Barrows  
Mark Battista  
Robert Battjes  
Barbara Beck  
Karin Behe  
Cynthia D. Belar  
J.G. Benedict  
Stanley Berent  
Linus Bieliauskas  
Karen Blair  
F. Bloch  
Felicia Hill Briggs  
Edward P. Burke  
Larry Burt  
Shane S. Bush  
Glorisa Canino  
Jean Campbell  
Scott Campbell Brown  
John A. Carpenter  
Christine H. Carrington

Judi Chamberlin  
LeeAnne Carrothers  
Mary Chamie  
Cecelia B. Collier  
William Connors  
John Corrigan  
Dale Cox  
M. Doreen Croser  
Eugene D'Angelo  
Gerben DeJong  
Jeffrey E. Evans  
Timothy G. Evans  
Debbie J. Farmer  
Michael Feil  
Manning Feinleib  
Risa Fox  
Carol Frattali  
Bill Frey  
E. Fuller  
Cheryl Gagne  
J. Luis Garcia Segura  
David W. Gately  
Carol George  
Olinda Gonzales  
Barbara Gottfried  
Bridget Grant  
Craig Gray  
David Gray  
Marjorie Greenberg  
Arlene Greenspan  
Frederick Guggenheim  
Neil Hadder  
Harlan Hahn  
Robert Haines  
Laura Lee Hall  
Heather Hancock  
Nandini Hawley  
Gregory W. Heath  
Gerry Hendershot  
Sarah Hershfeld  
Sarah Hertfelder  
Alexis Henry  
Howard Hoffman  
Audrey Holland  
Joseph G. Hollowell Jr  
Andrew Imparato  
John Jacobson  
Judith Jaeger  
Alan Jette  
J. Rock Johnson  
Gisele Kamanou-Goune  
Charles Kaelber  
Cille Kennedy  
Donald G. Kewman  
Michael Kita (deceased)  
Edward Knight  
Pataricia Kricos  
Susan Langmore  
Mitchell LaPlante  
Itzak Levav  
Renee Levinson  
Robert Liberman  
Don Lollar



Peter Love  
 David Lozovsky  
 Perianne Lurie  
 Jayne B. Lux  
 Reid Lyon  
 Anis Maitra  
 Bob MacBride  
 Kim MacDonald-Wilson  
 Peggy Maher  
 Ronald Manderscheid  
 Kofi Marfo  
 Ana Maria Margueytio  
 William C. Marrin  
 John Mather  
 Maria Christina  
 Mathiason  
 John McGinley  
 Theresa McKenna  
 Christine McKibbin  
 Christopher J.  
 McLaughlin  
 Laurie McQueen  
 Douglas Moul  
 Peter E. Nathan  
 Russ Newman  
 Els R. Nieuwenhuijsen  
 Joan F. van Nostrand  
 Jean Novak  
 Patricia Owens  
 Alcida Perez de  
 Velasquez  
 D. Jesse Peters  
 David B. Peterson  
 Harold Pincus  
 Paul Placek  
 Thomas E. Preston  
 Maxwell Prince  
 Jeffrey Pyne  
 Louis Quatrano  
 Juan Ramos  
 Geoffrey M. Reed  
 Anne Riley  
 Gilberto Romero  
 Patricia Roberts-Rose  
 Mark A. Sandberg  
 Judy Sangl  
 Marian Scheinholtz  
 Karin Schumacher  
 Katherine D. Seelman  
 Raymond Seltser  
 Rune J. Simeonsson  
 Debra Smith  
 Gretchen Swanson  
 Susan Stark  
 Denise G. Tate  
 Travis Threats  
 Cynthia Trask  
 Robert Trotter II  
 R. Alexander Vachon  
 Maureen Valente  
 Paolo del Vecchio  
 Lois Verbrugge

Katherine Verdolini  
 Candace Vickers  
 Gloriajean Wallace  
 Robert Walsh  
 Seth A. Warshausky  
 Paul Weaver  
 Patricia Welch  
 Gale Whiteneck  
 Tyler Whitney  
 Brian Williams  
 Jan Williams  
 Linda Wornall  
 J. Scott Yaruss  
 Ilene Zeitzer  
 Louise Zingeser

#### Uruguay

Paulo Alterway  
 Marta Barera  
 Margot Barrios  
 Daniela Bilbao  
 Gladys Curbelo  
 Ana M. Frappola  
 Ana M. Fosatti Pons  
 Angélica Etcheñique  
 Rosa Gervasio  
 Mariela Irigoin  
 Fernando Lavie  
 Silvia Núñez  
 Rossana Pipplol  
 Silvana Toledo

#### Vietnam

Nguyen Duc Truyen

#### Zimbabwe

Jennifer Jelsma  
 Dorcas Madzivire  
 Gillian Marks  
 Jennifer Muderedzi  
 Useh Ushotaneke

## Organisations of the United Nations system

International Labour Organization (ILO)

Susan Parker

United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF)

Habibi Gulbadan

United Nations Statistical Division

Margarat Mbogoni

Joann Vanek

United Nations Statistical Institute for Asia and the Pacific

Lau Kak En

United Nations Economic and Social Commission for Asia and Pacific

Bijoy Chaudhari

## World Health Organization

### Regional Offices

Africa: C. Mandlhate

Americas (Pan American Health Organisation): Carlos Castillo-Salgado, Roberto Becker, Margaret Hazlewood, Armando Vázquez

Eastern Mediterranean: A. Mohit, Abdel Aziz Saleh, Kassem Sara, M. Haytham Al Khayat

Europe: B. Serdar Savas, Anatoli Nossikov

South-East Asia: Than Sein, Myint Htwe

Western Pacific: R. Nesbit, Y.C. Chong

### Headquarters

Various departments at WHO headquarters were involved in the revision process. Individual staff members who contributed to the revision process are listed below with their departments are listed below.

M. Argandoña, formerly of Department of Substance Abuse

Z. Bankowski, Council for International Organizations of Medical Sciences

J.A. Costa e Silva, formerly Division of Mental Health and Prevention of Substance Abuse

S. Clark, Department of Health Information, Management and Dissemination

C. Djeddah, Department of Injuries and Violence Prevention

A. Goerdt, formerly of Department of Health Promotion

M. Goracci, formerly of Department of Injury Prevention and Rehabilitation

M. A. Jansen, formerly of Department of Mental Health and Substance Dependence

A. L'Hours, Global Programme on Evidence for Health Policy

A. Lopez, Global Programme on Evidence for Health Policy

J. Matsumoto, Department of External Cooperation and Partnerships

C. Mathers, Global Programme on Evidence for Health Policy

C. Murray, Global Programme on Evidence for Health Policy

H. Nabulsi, formerly of IMPACT

E. Pupulin, Department of Management of Noncommunicable Diseases

C. Romer, Department of Injuries and Violence Prevention

R. Sadana, Global Programme on Evidence for Health Policy

B. Saraceno, Department of Mental Health and Substance Dependence

A. Smith, Department of Management of Noncommunicable Diseases

J. Salomon, Global Programme on Evidence for Health Policy

M. Subramanian, formerly of World Health Reporting

M. Thuriaux, formerly of Division of Emerging and other Communicable Diseases

B. Thylefors, formerly of Department of Disability/Injury Prevention and Rehabilitation

M. Weber, Department of Child and Adolescent Health and Development

Sibel Volkan and Grazia Motturi provided administrative and secretarial support.

Can Çelik, Pierre Lewalle, Matilde Leonardi, Senda Bennaissa and Luis Prieto carried out specific aspects of the revision work.

Somnath Chatterji, Shekhar Saxena, Nenad Kostanjsek and Margie Schneider carried out the revision based on all the inputs received.

T. Bedirhan Üstün managed and coordinated the revision process and the overall ICF project.





ICE

**Index**



**Note:** This index is provided as a general tool for accessing categories within the classifications and discussions of issues and key terms in the Introduction and Annexes. Only words and phrases actually found in the ICF are indexed here. It is hoped that a more complete index of the ICF will be separately published and include more extensive cross-references to the items found in the classification. Towards that end, WHO welcomes suggestions from users for terms and phrases that could be added to the index to increase its usefulness.

- Abnormality, 213
- Absorption of nutrients, 82, 83
- Abstract thinking, abstraction, 57
- Access, 15, 16
- Accessibility, 171, 179 203, 204, 233, 240
- Accessory respiratory muscles, functions of, 79
- Acquaintances, 187
- Acquaintances, creating relationships with, 162
- Acquisition of goods and services, 153
- Acquisition of necessities, 153-4
- Acting in a play, 169
- Acting in accordance with social rules and conventions, 160
- Acting independently in social interactions, 160
- Activities and Participation, component, 3, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 14-17, 21, 22, 24, 123, 211, 214, 216, 219, 220, 222, 224, 226, 229-33, 234-7
- Activities and Participation List, uses of, 234-7
- Activities and Participation, structuring options, 234-7
- Activity, activities, 3, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 14-7, 21, 24, 123, 213, 223, 229, 234, 236, 237
- Activity limitations, 3, 8, 10-1, 14, 15, 19, 123, 213, 229
- Actual environment, 15, 229, 232
- Acute health care services, 203
- Administrative control, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205
- Abdominal cramps, 85
- Adoptive parents, 187
- Adrenal gland, 115
- Advocacy, ICF as a tool, 243-4
- Aerobic capacity, 80
- Aerophagia, 81
- Affect, 55, 180
- Agalactorrhoea, 92
- Age, aging, 17, 212-4
- Ageusia, 67
- Aggression, controlling verbal and physical, 160
- Agitation, 54
- Agreeableness, 50
- AIDS, 240
- Air conditioning, 186
- Air hunger, 80
- Air quality, 186
- Aircraft, piloting, 147
- Aircraft, using as a passenger, 147
- Akinetic mutism, 96, 97
- Alactation, 92
- Alertness, 48
- Allergies, 78
- Allodynia, 68
- Allopathic medication, 173
- Alopecia, 104
- Alveoli, 114
- Ambitendency, 54
- Ambulance services, 198
- Amenorrhoea, 91
- Amicable, 50
- Amnesia, dissociative, 53
- Amnesia, selective, 53
- Amusement or diversion, engaging in, 168
- Anabolism, 85
- Anaesthesia, 67
- Anaesthesia dolorosa, 68
- Anal sphincter incompetence, 83
- Analgesia, 68
- Anarthria, 71

- Anatomical parts, 10, 12, 213  
 Anchor points, disability 21  
 Anger, 55  
 Animal-powered transporters, 147  
 Animals, 183  
 Animals for personal mobility, 188  
 Animals, taking care of, 157  
 Ankle and foot, structure, 120  
 Ankle joint and joints of foot and toes, 120  
 Ankle reflex, 99  
 Anopsia, 63  
 Anosmia, 67  
 Antisocial behaviour, 51  
 Anuria, 89  
 Anxiousness, 55  
 Aphonia, 71  
 Apnoea, 78  
 Appetite, 51  
 Appliances, household, 155, 156, 157, 174, 179  
 Apprenticeship (work preparation), 165  
 Apprenticeships programmes, 204  
 Apraxia, dressing, 60  
 Apraxia, ideation, 60  
 Apraxia, ideomotor, 60  
 Apraxia, oculomotor, 60  
 Apraxia, speech, 60  
 Architects, 188  
 Architecture, 19  
 Architecture and construction policies, 193  
 Architecture and construction services, 193  
 Architecture and construction services, systems and policies, 193  
 Architecture and construction systems, 193  
 Arousal, 55, 90  
 Arranging a living space with furniture, 153  
 Arrhythmias, 74  
 Art galleries, going to, 168  
 Arterial constriction, 75  
 Arterial dilation, 75  
 Arteries, 113  
 Arteries, constriction of, 75  
 Arteries, functions of, 75  
 Arteriosclerosis, 75  
 Arthritis, 94  
 Articulation of phonemes, 71  
 Asking questions, 135  
 Aspiration of food, 81  
 Assertiveness, 51  
 Assessment, clinical 22, 47, 105, 124, 172, 221-2, 229, 231-2, 242, 243-4, 250, 251  
 Assessment instruments, general 15, 19, 21-2  
 Assessment instruments and ICF, 47, 105, 124, 172, 221-2, 251  
 Assets, 181  
 Assets, financial, 181  
 Assets, intangible, 181  
 Assets, tangible, 181  
 Assimilation functions, 83  
 Assisting other moving around, 158  
 Assisting others, 157  
 Assisting others in communication, 158  
 Assisting others in health maintenance, 158  
 Assisting others in interpersonal relations, 158  
 Assisting others in movement, 158  
 Assisting others in nutrition, 158  
 Assisting others with self-care, 158  
 Assistive devices or personal assistance, 15, 17, 19, 24, 173-7, 203, 204, 214, 232  
 Assistive devices, maintaining, 157  
 Assistive products and technology for education, 175-6  
 Associations, engaging in, 168  
 Associations, forming political, 170  
 Associations, religious, 199  
 Associations and organizational policies, 199  
 Associations and organizational services, 198  
 Associations and organizational services, systems and policies, 199  
 Associations of lawyers, physicians or academics, engaging in, 168  
 Asymmetric gait, 102  
 Ataxic dysarthria, 71  
 Atherosclerosis, 75



- Athetosis, 101
- Athetotic movements, 101
- Atmospheric pressure, 183
- Attention, 53
- Attention, dividing, 53
- Attention, sharing, 53
- Attention, shifting, 53
- Attention, sustaining, 53
- Attitudes, 17, 19, 190-1, 239
- Attitudes of acquaintances, peers, colleagues, neighbours and community members, 190
- Attitudes of extended family members, 190
- Attitudes of friends, 190
- Attitudes of health professionals, 191
- Attitudes of other professionals, 191
- Attitudes of immediate family members, 190
- Attitudes of people in positions of authority, 190
- Attitudes of people in subordinate positions, 191
- Attitudes of personal care providers and personal assistants, 191
- Attitudes of strangers, 191
- Attitudes, societal, 191
- Attitudinal environment, 10, 16
- Attorney representation, 198
- Audio loops, 178
- Audio recorders and receivers, 175
- Audiologists, 188
- Auditoriums or stadiums, accessible seating, 178
- Auditory perception, 55
- Auditory trainers, 175
- Aunts, 163, 187
- Aural differentiation of ground, 65
- Aural pressure, 66
- Authority, people in positions of, 187
- Autism, 49
- Automatic bladder, 89
- Automatic local joint reflex, 99
- Automobile, driving, 147
- Automobile, repairing, 157
- Awareness, 5, 48, 49, 54, 58
- Awareness of one's body, 60
- Awareness of one's identity, 60
- Azoospermia, 92
- Babbling, 72, 73
- Balance reactions, 100
- Banks, 200
- Bank account, maintaining, 167
- Barrier, environmental, 11, 17, 22, 24, 171-2, 214, 222, 230, 232-3, 238, 243
- Bartering, 166
- Basal ganglia, 107
- Basal metabolic rate, 85
- Basic learning, 125-6
- Bath or shower, taking, 149
- Bedsore, 103
- Behaviour pattern, 17
- Bending, 139
- Biceps reflex, 99
- Bicycle, driving, 147
- Bicycles, repairing, 157
- Bile production, 82
- Binaural synthesis, 65
- Binocular acuity of distant vision, 62
- Binocular acuity of near vision, 62
- Biomedical standards, 12
- Biomedical status, 12
- Biting, 81
- Bladder, automatic, 89
- Bladder, functions of, 89
- Bladder, feeling of fullness of, 90
- Bliss board, 134
- Bloated, feeling, 84
- Blocks in ICF, function of, 220
- Blood pressure functions, 76
- Blood pressure, decreased, 76
- Blood pressure, increased, 76
- Blood pressure, maintenance of, 76
- Blood production, 74, 76
- Blood supply to the heart, 75
- Blood vessels, functions of, 75
- Blood, metabolite-carrying functions of, 77
- Blood, oxygen-carrying functions of, 77
- Blowing, 79
- Boat, using private, 147
- Body adjustment reactions, 100

- Body functions, 8, 1-3, 17, 21, 22, 24, 47, 211, 213, 216, 218-9, 220, 222, 224, 227
- Body functions, standard, 213
- Body image, 61
- Body language, expressing and producing, 134
- Body Mass Index, 84
- Body organs, 10, 12
- Body position, changing and maintaining, 138-41
- Body position, changing basic, 138
- Body position, maintaining, 139
- Body structure, 4, 7, 10-3, 17, 21-4, 105, 213, 219, 224, 227
- Body structures, standard, 213
- Body systems, 4, 7, 10, 12
- Body temperature, 87
- Body temperature, maintenance of, 87
- Boiling and heating food, 154
- Bone marrow, 113
- Bones of ankle and foot, 120
- Bones of face, 118
- Bones of forearm, 119
- Bones of hand, 119
- Bones of lower leg, 120
- Bones of neck region, 118
- Bones of pelvic region, 119
- Bones of shoulder region, 118
- Bones of thigh, 120
- Bones of upper arm, 118
- Books, 176
- Bottles and cans, opening 151, 152
- Bradycardia, 74
- Bradyhalia, 72
- Bradypnoea, 78
- Braille versions of newspaper, 200
- Braille writers, using, 136
- Braille, communicating with, 134
- Braille, reading, 125
- Braille, writing, 125
- Brain, functions of 12, 48, 57, 107, 213, 227
- Brain, frontal lobe, 107
- Brain, occipital lobe, 107
- Brain, parietal lobe, 107
- Brain, temporal lobe, 107
- Breast and nipple, 116
- Breast cancer, 240
- Breast feeding, 152
- Breathing, irregular, 78
- Broca's aphasia, 58
- Bronchial spasm, 78
- Bronchial tree, 114
- Brother, relating to and as, 163
- Bruising, 103
- Brushing teeth, 150
- Bruxism, 101
- Budgeting time, 130
- Building access, design and products, private, 179
- Building access, products and technology, public, 178
- Building codes, 193
- Building entry and exit, products and technology, public, 178
- Building wayfinding, design, products and technology, public, 179
- Building, entering and exiting, design and products, private, 179
- Buildings, design and building products, private, 179
- Buoyant, feeling 50
- Burping, 81
- Bus, 174
- Bus, using, 147
- Cachexia, 84
- Calculating, 60, 127
- Calculation, complex, 60
- Calculation, simple, 60
- Callus formation, 103
- Calm, feeling of 50
- Camel, riding, 148
- Capacity, construct of 8, 11, 14-6, 19, 22-4, 214, 216
- Capacity, as qualifier, 123, 226, 229, 231, 232, 235, 237
- Capacity, as qualifier 'without assistance', 230
- Capillaries, 113
- Capillaries, functions of, 75
- Capital goods and services, 181
- Carbohydrate metabolism, 85
- Cardiac output, diminished, 74
- Cardiomyopathy, 74

- Cardiovascular and respiratory systems, additional functions and sensations of, 79-80
- Cardiovascular system, functions of, 74-6
- Cardiovascular, haematological, immunological and respiratory systems, functions of, 74-80
- Cardiovascular, immunological and respiratory systems, structures of, 113-4
- Caregivers, 188
- Caring for body parts, 149
- Caring for fingernails, 150
- Caring for hair, 150
- Caring for household objects, 156
- Caring for household objects and assisting others, 156-8
- Caring for skin, 149
- Caring for teeth, 150
- Caring for toenails, 150
- Carpal bones, 95
- Carrying in the arms, 141
- Carrying objects, 142
- Carrying objects in the hands, 141
- Carrying on shoulders, hip and back, 141
- Carrying on the head, 141
- Carrying out plans, 57
- Carrying out single or multiple tasks, 129
- Carrying, moving and handling objects, 141-3
- Cars, 174
- Case examples, 238-41
- Catabolism, 85
- Catatonia, 54
- Catching objects, 143
- Categories in ICF, 8, 10, 13, 16, 21, 211, 217, 220-1, 225, 229, 231, 234-5, 237, 251
- Causation, etiology, 13
- Cerebellum, 107
- Ceremonies, engaging in, 168
- Cervical vertebral column, 120
- Cervix, 116
- Changing and maintaining body position, 138-41
- Chanting, 72, 73
- Character style, 17
- Charitable organizations, engaging in, 168
- Cheerfulness, 50
- Chewing, 81
- Child parent relationships, maintaining, 162
- Child, relating as, 162
- Childbirth, 92
- Childbirth, delayed, 92
- Childbirth, premature, 92
- Children, 73, 125, 131, 158, 169, 187
- Children's play, 169
- Choice among options, making, 128
- Choking, 80
- Choosing appropriate clothing, 151
- Chorea, 101
- Choreatic movements, 101
- Chronological sequencing, 58
- Church, temple, mosque or synagogue, attending, 169
- Cinema, going to, 169
- Cinema or theatre, engaging in, 168
- Circadian rhythm, 52
- Circumstantiality, 56, 57
- Citizenship rights, enjoying, 170
- Civil litigation, 198
- Civil protection policies, 198
- Civil protection services, 197
- Civil protection services, systems and policies, 197
- Civil protection systems, 197
- Classification, categories, 217
- Classification, granularity, 217
- Classification, levels, 217
- Classification, parts of ICF, 216, 219
- Classification, scope of ICF 3, 7, 13
- Classification, unit of ICF, 7-8, 10, 217
- Classification, universe of in ICF, 7
- Classification, components of ICF, 216
- Claudication, 75
- Cleaning bathrooms and toilets, 155
- Cleaning cooking area and utensils, 155
- Cleaning household furnishings., 155
- Cleaning living area, 155
- Cleaning products, 174
- Cleaning tables and floors, 155



- Cleaning the house, 155  
Cleaning windows and walls, 155  
Climate, 183  
Climbing, 145  
Clinical applications of ICF 5, 250-1  
Clinical use of ICF, ethical  
    guidelines, 244-5  
Clinics, 203, 204  
Clitoral erection, 90  
Clitoris, 116  
Closed captioning services, 199  
Clothes, 151, 155, 156, 174  
Clothes, making and repairing, 156  
Clothes, putting on, 151  
Clothes, taking off, 151  
Clothes, shopping for, 154  
Clotting functions of blood, 77  
Clouding of consciousness, 48  
Cluttering, 72  
Coagulation of blood, 77  
Cochlea, 110  
Coccyx, 121  
Cochlear implants, 175  
Coding in ICF, 3, 5, 11, 12, 15, 21-3,  
    21-2, 23, 219-33  
Coding body functions, 226  
Coding body structures, 228  
Coding convention, code "8", 226  
Coding, Environmental Factors,  
    225, 232  
Coding, generic scale, 22  
Coding, options for Activities and  
    Participation, 235-6  
Coding, relevance to health  
    condition, 224  
Cognitive flexibility, 58  
Cognitive functions, 49, 53, 56, 57  
Cognitive functions, higher-level,  
    57  
Co-inhabitants, creating  
    relationships with, 162  
Colleagues, 160, 187, 190  
Colour vision, 56, 62, 63, 184  
Coma, 48  
Combing hair, 150  
Comfort, ensuring one's comfort,  
    152  
Communicating - producing, 133-5  
Communicating with - receiving -  
    body gestures, 133  
Communicating with - receiving -  
    drawings and photographs, 133  
Communicating with - receiving -  
    formal sign language messages,  
    134  
Communicating with - receiving -  
    general signs and symbols, 133  
Communicating with - receiving -  
    nonverbal messages, 133  
Communicating with - receiving -  
    spoken messages, 133  
Communicating with - receiving -  
    written messages, 134  
Communication, 14, 196, 234, 235,  
    253  
Communication boards, 175  
Communication devices and  
    techniques, using, 136  
Communication policies, 196  
Communication services, 196  
Communication services, systems  
    and policies, 196  
Communication systems, 196  
Communication techniques, using,  
    136  
Communication, products and  
    technology, 175  
Communication, 133-7  
Community life, engaging in, 168  
Community members, 187, 190  
Community, social and civic life,  
    168-70  
Comprehending literal and implied  
    meanings, 133  
Computer hardware and software,  
    176  
Computer hardware or software,  
    176  
Computer software and hardware,  
    175  
Computer technology, adapted, 176  
Computer-based mass  
    communication, 199, 200  
Computers, using, 136  
Concentration, 53  
Conduction aphasia, 58  
Confidence, 51  
Confidentiality, ethical guideline for  
    use of ICF, 244  
Congenital anomaly, 212



- Conjunctiva, sclera, choroid, 109
- Conscientiousness, 50
- Consciousness, 48
- Consciousness, continuity of, 48
- Consciousness, loss of, 48
- Consciousness, quality of, 48
- Consciousness, state of, 48
- Consequence of disease, 4
- Constipation, 83
- Constructs in ICF, 8, 11, 14-7, 19, 22-4, 213-4, 216, 222, 229-32, 235, 237, 251
- Construction standards, 193
- Consumer bodies, 192
- Consumer councils, 195
- Consumer goods, policies for the production of, 193
- Consumer goods, services for the production of, 192
- Consumer goods, services, systems and policies, 192
- Consumer goods, systems for the production of, 192
- Consuming nutritious foods, 152
- Contextual factors, 7, 8, 10-1, 16, 19, 213, 216, 247
- Continuing education, 204
- Continuous incontinence, 89
- Controlling verbal and physical aggression, 160
- Conversation, 135, 136
- Conversation and use of communication devices and techniques, 135-7
- Conversation, ending, 135
- Conversation, starting, 135
- Conversation, sustaining, 135
- Conversing with many people, 136
- Conversing with one person, 135
- Cooking, 154
- Cooperation of both eyes, 64
- Cooperativeness, 50
- Coordination of voluntary movements, 100
- Coping styles, 17
- Coprolalia, 101
- Copying, 125
- Cornea, 109
- Coronary insufficiency, 74
- Coronary ischaemia, 75
- Corporations, 200
- Correctional or penal facilities, 198
- Cortical lobes, 107
- Coughing, 79
- Courts, tribunals and other agencies, 198
- Crafts or hobbies, engaging in, 168-9
- Crafts, engaging in, 169
- Cranial nerves, 107
- Cranium, 118
- Craving, 51
- Crawling, 145
- Criminal trials, 198
- Crises, handling, 131
- Criticism in relationships, dealing with, 159
- Crying aloud, 72
- Cultural applicability and ICIDH, 248
- Cultural events, engaging in, 169
- Cultural organizations, 8, 169, 177, 187, 198, 199, 249
- Cultural variation and classification, 218, 247
- Culture, recreation and sport, products and technology, 177
- Curiosity, 50
- Customs, 190
- Cutting or breaking food into pieces, 151
- Daily living, products and technology, 174
- Daily routine, carrying out, 130
- Daily routine, completing, 131
- Daily routine, managing, 131
- Daily necessities, gathering, 154
- Dark, adaptation to, 63
- Data comparability and ICF, 5
- Day/night cycles, 185
- deceitfulness, 51
- Decision-making, 4, 57, 128
- Decoding messages, 58, 59
- Decorating rooms., 153
- Decryption of language, 58
- Defecation, 83
- Defecation, frequency of, 84
- Defecation, regulating, 150
- Defensive reactions, 100
- Defiance, 50

- Definitions in ICF, 221
- Definitions, in classifications, 217
- Dehydration, 86
- Déjà vu, 61
- Delayed ejaculation, 90
- Delirium, 48
- Delusion, 57
- Dementia, 49
- Demographic change, 182
- Dental hygiene, 150
- Dental prosthesis, taking care of 150
- Dependability, 51, 171
- Depersonalization, 60
- Derealization, 60
- Design codes, 194
- Design, construction and building products and technology for entering and exiting buildings for public and private use, 178-9
- Design, construction and building products and technology for gaining access to facilities in buildings for public and private use, 178-9
- Design, construction and building products and technology for way finding, path routing and designation of locations in buildings for public and private use, 179
- Designers, 188
- Desks and filing cabinets, 176
- Despairing, 50
- Determinants of health, 4
- Development, 171
- Diabetes, 238
- Diagnosis, 3, 4
- Diagrams, making, 134
- Diaphragm, 114
- Diaphragm, function of, 79
- Diarrhoea, 83
- Diencephalon, 107
- Diet, maintaining balanced diet, 152
- Digestive system functions, 81-5
- Digestive, metabolic and endocrine systems, functions of 81-88
- Disability, 3, 4, 7, 8, 10, 11, 17, 18, 19-21, 211, 213, 216, 242
- Disability benefits, 202
- Disability, lived experience of, 15, 123, 229
- Disability pension, 201-2
- Disability, as a medical issue, 20
- Disability, as a political issue., 20
- Disability compensation systems, 5
- Disabled Peoples' International, 242
- Discriminating sounds, 55
- Discrimination, social, 16, 19
- Discussion, 136
- Discussion with many people, 136
- Discussion with one person, 136
- Discussion, ending, 136
- Discussion, starting, 136
- Discussion, sustaining, 136
- Disease, 3, 4, 8, 13, 15, 16, 19, 20, 212, 219
- Disease, consequence of, 4
- Disfigurement, 19
- Dislocation of a joint, 94
- Dislocation of shoulder, 94
- Disorder, 4, 8, 13, 212
- Disposing of garbage, 156
- Distraction, handling, 131
- Diurnal cycle, 52
- Diurnal cycles, 185
- Dizziness, 66
- Dizziness, 66
- Doctors, 188
- Domain, of disability, 3, 7, 8, 10, 14, 15, 21, 22, 216
- Domestic appliances, maintaining, 157
- Domestic life, 153-8
- Domesticated animals, 188
- Door handles, 179
- Doors, power-assisted, 178, 179
- Downhearted, feeling, 50
- Drawing, 81, 134
- Drawings and photographs, expressing with and producing, 134
- Dress codes, following, 151
- Dressing, 151
- Dressing in keeping with climatic conditions, 151
- Drinking, 152
- Drinking running water, 152
- Drinking through a straw, 152
- Drive, psychological, 50-4

- Driving a vehicle, 147
- Driving animal-powered vehicles, 147
- Driving human-powered transportation, 147
- Driving motorized vehicles, 147
- Drooling, 81
- Drug-induced altered consciousness, 48
- Drugs, 173
- Drying oneself, 149
- Dusting, 155
- Dutch Collaborating Centre for ICIDH, 247
- Dwelling and furnishings, maintaining, 157
- Dysdiadochokinesia, 100
- Dysfluency, 72
- Dyskinesia, 101
- Dysmenorrhoea, 92
- Dyspareunia, 92
- Dysphagia, 81, 82
- Dysphagia, oesophageal, 82
- Dysphagia, oral, 82
- Dysphagia, pharyngeal, 82
- Dysphonia, 71
- Dyspnoea, 80
- Dystonias, 98
- Dystonic movements, 101
  
- Ear, 109
- Ear, eustachian canal, 109
- Ear, inner, 110
- Ear, inner, functions of, 66
- Ear, middle, 109
- Ear, ossicles, 109
- Ear, semicircular canals, 110
- Ear, tympanic membrane, 109
- Ear, vestibular labyrinth, 110
- Earthquakes, 184
- Eating, 151
- Eating implements, using, 151
- Echolalia, 54
- Echopraxia, 54
- Economic doctrines, 201
- Economic entitlements, public, having command over, 167
- Economic life, 166-7
- Economic policies, 201
- Economic resources, having command over, 167
- Economic self-sufficiency, 167
- Economic services, 200
- Economic services, systems and policies, 200
- Economic systems, 201
- Economic transactions, basic, 166
- Economic transactions, complex, 167
- Ectopic pregnancy, 92
- Education, 164, 176, 204-5
- Education, continuing, 204
- Education, informal, 164
- Education and training policies, 205
- Education and training services, 204
- Education and training services, systems and policies, 204
- Education and training systems, 204
- Education, assistive products and technology, 176
- Education, attending school regularly, 164
- Education, college, 164
- Education, gaining admission to school, 164
- Education, medical school or other professional school, 164
- Education, post-secondary educational institutions, 204
- Education, products and technology, 175
- Education, professional schools, 164
- Education, school-related responsibilities and privileges, 164
- Education, studying and completing assigned tasks and projects, 164
- Education, university, 164
- Education, working cooperatively with other students, 164
- Educational toys, 176
- Educational uses of ICF, 5
- Ejaculation, 90
- Elbow joint, 118
- Elected officials, 206
- Electricity, 184, 195
- Electrolyte balance, 86



- Electronic mail, 196
- Electro-optical devices, 175
- Elephant riding, 148
- Elimination of faeces, 83
- Emaciation, 84
- Emergency services, 195, 198
- Emotion, appropriateness of, 55
- Emotion, range of, 55
- Emotion, regulation of, 55, 160
- Emotional functions, 55
- Emotionally inexpressive, 50
- Employees, 188
- Employers, 161, 165, 187
- Employment seeking, 165
- Employment, acquiring, 165
- Employment, advancing through a job, 165
- Employment, attending work on time as required, 165, 166
- Employment, being hired and accepting employment, 165
- Employment, being supervised, 165, 166
- Employment, full-time, 165, 166, 241
- Employment, keeping, 165
- Employment, leaving a job, 165
- Employment, obtaining promotion and other advancements, 165
- Employment, part-time, 166
- Employment, performing required tasks to get hired, 165
- Employment preparation programmes, engaging in, 165
- Employment, products and technology, 176
- Employment, seeking, 165
- Employment, seeking employment and getting a job, 165, 166
- Employment, short-term contract work, 166
- Employment, supervising other workers, 165, 166
- Employment, terminating, 165
- Endocrine gland functions, 87
- Endocrine glands, 115
- Energy, psychological, 51
- Enunciation, 71
- Environment, actual 15, 229, 232
- Environment, current, 7, 11, 15, 19, 24, 123, 214, 229, 230, 232, 238, 239, 241, 252
- Environment, immediate, 173
- Environment, social, 16, 20
- Environment, standard or uniform, 3, 11, 15, 47, 105, 123, 124, 172, 214, 229, 230, 232, 252
- Environmental control units, 174
- Environmental disasters, 184
- Environmental factors, 3, 4, 5, 8, 10, 13, 15, 16-9, 21, 22, 24, 123, 171, 213-4, 216, 219, 222, 224, 225, 226, 229, 230, 232-3 239, 233, 238, 243, 248
- Environmental factor, barrier, 11, 17, 22, 24, 171-2, 214, 222, 230, 232-3, 238, 243
- Environmental factors, coding, 171
- Environmental factor, facilitator, 6, 11, 17, 22, 24, 171-2, 214, 222, 230, 232-3, 243
- Environmental factors, qualifier, 171
- Environmental modification, 5
- Environmental planning policies, 194
- Environmental planning policy, 194
- Environmentally adjusted ability, 214
- Enzyme production and action, 82
- Ergonomics services, 205
- Estate agencies, 195
- Ethical guidelines for the use of ICF, 244-5
- Etiquette, 191
- European Union, 206
- Evaluating options, 58
- Event classification, 224
- Even-tempered, 50
- Exchanging capital or property, 167
- Exchanging goods or services, 166
- Exclusion terms in ICF, 221
- Excretory functions, 89
- Executive functions, psychological 57
- Exercise tolerance functions, 80
- Experience of self and time, 60
- Experience-seeking, 50



- Expressing customary greetings, 135
- Expressing with body language, 134
- Expressing with drawings and photographs, 134
- Expressing with formal sign language, 135
- Expressing with gestures, 134
- Expressing with signs and symbols, 134
- Expressing with words, 134
- Expression of language, 59
- Expression of language, sign, 59
- Expression of language, spoken, 59
- Expression of language, written, 59
- Extended family relationships, creating, 163
- External ear, 109
- External genitalia, 116
- External muscles of the eye, functions of, 64
- External nose, 111
- External ocular muscles, 109
- Extra-articular ligaments, fasciae, extramuscular aponeuroses, retinacula, septa, bursae, 121
- Extraversion, 50
- Eye, fixation of 64
- Eye foot coordination, 100
- Eye hand coordination, 100
- Eye, internal muscles, functions of, 64
- Eye irritation, 64
- Eye socket, 109
- Eye strain, 64
- Eye, ear and related structures, 109-10
- Eyeball, 109
- Eyeball, vitreous body, 109
- Eyebrow, 109
- Eyelid, 109
- Eyelid protective reflex, 64
- Eyelid, functions of, 64
- Facilitator, environmental, 6, 11, 17, 22, 24, 171, 172, 214, 222, 230, 232, 233, 243
- Faecal consistency, 83-4
- Faecal continence, 83-4
- Fallopian tubes, 116
- Family relationships, creating and maintaining, 162
- Family, extended, 163, 187
- Family, immediate, 187
- Farm animals, 183
- Farm lands, 180
- Fat metabolism, 86
- Fatiguability, 80
- Fear, 55
- Feeling too fat or too thin, 61
- Feelings, 55, 64
- Fertility, 92
- Field trials, during ICIDH-2 revision, 3, 248
- Financial organizations, 200
- Finding solutions to questions or situations, 127
- Fine arts, engaging in or appreciating, 169
- Fine hand use, 142
- Finger nails, 122
- Fire and life safety standards, 193
- Fire, emergency services, 133, 193, 198
- Fitness, managing, 152
- Fixation of the eye, 64
- Flaccid dysarthria, 71
- Flatulence, 83-4
- Floods, 184
- Flora and fauna, 183
- Fluency and rhythm of speech, 72
- Focal dystonias, 97
- Focusing attention, 126
- Following medical and other health advice, 152
- Following rules, 126
- Food, 173
- Food, boiling and heating, 154
- Food, breakdown of, 83
- Food, keeping fresh, 156
- Food, manipulating in the mouth, 81
- Food, serving, 155
- Food, shopping for, 154
- Footwear, fixing and polishing, 156
- Footwear, putting on, 151
- Footwear, taking off, 151
- Forearm, structure, 119
- Forest fires, 184

- Formal associations, engaging in, 168
- Formal sign language, 134, 135
- Foster parents, 187
- French Collaborating Centre for ICIDH, 247
- Friends, 187
- Friendships, creating, 162
- Friendships, finding and establishing, 160
- Frigidity, 90
- Frontal lobes, 57
- Frowning, 134
- Frozen joints, 94
- Frozen pelvis, 95
- Frozen scapula, 95
- Frozen shoulder, 94
- Fuel, getting, 154
- Fugue, 48
- Functional stimulation devices, 174
- Functioning, 3, 4, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 15, 18, 19, 20, 21, 212, 216
- functioning, process of, 18
- Furnishing a place to live, 153
- Furniture, 129, 156, 174
- Furniture, arranging a living space with furniture, 153
- Gagging, 80
- Gait, 54, 100, 102
- Gait pattern, 102
- Galactorrhoea, 92
- Gall bladder and ducts, 115
- Games, engaging in, 169
- Garbage, disposing of, 156
- Gender, 7, 17, 214
- General tasks and demands, 129-132
- Genetic abnormality, 13
- Genetic predisposition, 16, 212
- Genital and reproductive functions, 89-93
- Genitalia, 116
- Genitourinary and reproductive structures, 116-7
- Geriatric applications, 220
- Geriatrics, 23
- Gestures, expressing with, 134
- Glans penis, 117
- Glasses and contact lenses, 175
- Global mental functions. 48-52
- Global psychosocial functions, 49
- Globus feeling, 84
- Gloomy, 50
- Gluten intolerance, 83
- Goal-directed behaviours, 57
- Good life, 211
- Government, local, regional and national, 206
- Governmental life of a citizen, enjoying, 170
- Grammatical structures, organizing, 59
- Grandparents., 163, 187
- Grasping objects, 142
- Greeting, expressing customary, 135
- Guardians, 162, 187
- Gums, 111
- Gustatory perception, 56
- Habits, 17
- Haematological and immunological systems, functions of, 76-8
- Hair and nails, functions of, 104
- Hair, functions of, 103, 104, 149
- Hair, growth, 104
- Hair, structure, 122
- Hand and arm use, 143
- Hand and eye coordination, 54
- Hand, structure, 119
- Handicap, 3, 211, 213, 242
- Handicrafts, engaging in, 169
- Handling crises, 131
- Handling distraction, 131
- Handling objects, 142
- Handling responsibilities, 131
- handling stress, 129, 131
- Handling stress and other psychological demands, 131
- Hard palate, 111
- Harvesting vegetables and fruits, 154
- Hate, 55
- Head and neck region, structure, 118
- Headache, 241
- Healing, 103
- Health and safety boards, 195
- Health advice, following, 152

- Health, avoiding risks to, 152
- Health care systems, 5, 6
- Health care workers, 5
- Health, components of 4
- Health condition, 3, 4, 7, 8, 13, 16, 17, 19, 212, 224
- Health condition, etiology of, 4, 13
- Health, determinants of, 4
- Health domains, 3, 7, 22, 211-2
- Health information systems, 5
- Health insurance, 5, 201
- Health, looking after one's, 152
- Health outcomes, 4, 5
- Health outcome evaluation, 5, 23, 220
- Health policies, 5, 204
- Health professionals, 188
- Health promotion, 6
- Health promotion and disease prevention services, 203
- Health-related domains, 3, 7, 8, 21-2, 212
- Health research, 4, 5
- Health services, systems and policies, 203
- Health states, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 15, 16, 17, 20, 21, 22, 212, 220
- Health statistics, 5
- Health system, 203, 212
- Health-related domains, 3, 7, 8, 21, 22, 212
- Health-related states, 3, 5, 7, 8, 10, 16, 22, 212
- Hearing aids,, 175
- Hearing and vestibular functions, 65-7
- Hearing functions, 65
- Heart, 113
- Heart beat, irregular, 74
- Heart failure, 74
- Heart functions, 74
- Heart rate, 74
- Heart rhythm, 74
- Heart valves, functions of, 74
- Heart, atria, 113
- Heart, ventricles, 113
- Heartburn, 84
- Hemiparesis, 96, 97, 99, 226
- Hemiplegia, 96, 97, 99
- Hemiplegic gait, 102
- Herbs, 173
- Heritage or conservation policies, 194
- Higher education, 164
- Hip joint, 120
- HIV-positivity, 16, 19
- Hoarseness, 71
- Hobbies, engaging in, 169
- Home, acquiring, 153
- Hopeful, feeling of being, 50
- Hormonal balance, 87
- Horse riding, 148
- Horse-drawn cart, driving, 147
- Hospitals, 203, 204
- Hot flushes during menopause, 92
- House-building, 193
- Household tasks, 154-6
- Household items, shopping for, 154
- Housing organizations, 195
- Housing policies, 195
- Housing services, 195
- Housing services, systems and policies, 194
- Housing systems, 195
- Human resources and personnel management services, 205
- Human rights, 6, 20, 170
- Human-caused events, 184
- Human-made products, 173
- Humidity, 183, 186
- Humming, 72, 73
- Hurricanes, 184
- Husband, relating to or as, 163
- Hydramnios, 92
- Hydronephrosis, 89
- Hypaesthesia, 68
- Hypalgesia, 68
- Hyperacidity of stomach, 82
- Hyperadrenalism, 87
- Hyperaesthesia, 67, 68
- Hypercalcaemia, 86
- Hypergonadism, 87
- Hyperkalaemia, 86
- Hypermenorrhoea, 91
- Hypermobility of joints, 94
- Hypermotility of intestines, 82
- Hypernasality, 71
- Hypernatraemia, 86
- Hyperparathyroidism, 87
- Hyperpathia, 68



- Hyperpituitarism, 87
- Hypersensitivity reactions, 78
- Hypersensitivity to light, 63
- Hypersomnia, 52
- Hypertension, 76
- Hyperthermia, 87
- Hyperthyroidism, 85, 87
- Hypertonia, 97
- Hyperventilation, 78
- Hypoadrenalism, 87
- Hypocalcaemia, 86
- Hypogeusia, 67
- Hypogonadism, 87
- Hypokalaemia, 86
- Hypomenorrhoea, 91
- Hyponasality, 71
- Hyponatraemia, 86
- Hypoparathyroidism, 87
- Hypopituitarism, 87
- Hyposensitivity to light, 63
- Hyposmia, 67
- Hypotension, 76
- Hypothermia, 87
- Hypothyroidism, 85, 87
- Hypotonia, 97
- Hypotonic urinary bladder, 89
  
- ICD-10, 4, 13, 219, 246
- Ice-storms, 184
- ICF browser, 225
- ICF constructs, 3, 8, 18, 19
- ICF databases, 251
- ICF, aims of, 5
- ICF, applications, 5
- ICF, case-recording forms, 251
- ICF, clinical use versions, 250
- ICF, computerization, 251
- ICF and data comparability, 5
- ICF, definitions in, 221
- ICF, exclusion terms in, 221
- ICF, as a framework, 3, 4, 6, 7, 16, 251
- ICF, full (detailed) version, 9, 12, 21, 250
- ICF, future directions, 250
- ICF, inclusion terms in, 221
- ICF, minimal health information, 253
- ICF, operational definitions in, 21, 217, 221, 251
- ICF, presentation of, 8
- ICF, properties of, 7
- ICF, research versions of, 250
- ICF, satisfaction or feeling of involvement or satisfaction, coding, 224
- ICF, short (concise) version, 9, 21, 250
- ICF, structural features of, 21
- ICF, training materials, 252
- ICF, use of, 21
- ICIDH, 1980, 3, 5, 7, 12, 18, 211, 213, 244, 246, 247, 248, 249
- ICIDH revision, 246-9
- Ideation, 56, 57
- Ideologies, 17, 190, 191
- Imaginative, 50
- Imitating, 125
- Immune response, 77
- Immune response, non-specific, 77
- Immune response, specific, 77
- Immune system, structure, 113
- Immunological system functions, 77
- Impairment, 3-4, 8, 10, 11-13, 15, 16, 19, 22, 24, 47, 105, 213
- Impairment, identifying, 226-7
- Impairment, scaling severity, 226
- Impairments, interrelationship between, 227
- Impotence, 90
- Impulse control, 51
- Inattentive, 50
- Income support services, 201, 202
- Incontinence, overflow, 89
- Incontinence, reflex, 89
- Incontinence, stress, 89
- Incontinence, urge, 89
- Individual perspective on functioning and disability, 3, 7, 8, 10, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 20, 213
- Individual's health profile, coding, 224
- Indoor air quality, 186
- Informal associations, engaging in, 168
- informal or casual gatherings, engaging in, 169
- Informal relationships with acquaintances, creating, 162



- Informal relationships with co-inhabitants, creating, 162
- Informal relationships with friends, creating, 162
- Informal relationships with neighbours, creating, 162
- Informal relationships with peers, creating, 162
- Information matrix, 14, 15, 229, 235, 236, 237
- Information systems, 5
- Ingestion functions, 81
- Inhibition, 50
- Injury, 4, 8, 212
- Inquisitive, 50
- In-service training, 165
- Insight, 58
- Insomnia, 52
- Institutionalization, 19
- Insurance services, 200
- Intellectual functions, 49
- Intellectual growth, 49
- Intellectual retardation, 49
- Interacting according to social rules, 160
- Interacting, regulating behaviours within, 160 interactions, 160
- Intercostal muscles, 114
- Intermittent claudication, 75
- International classifications, WHO family of, 3, 4
- International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 173, 192, 251
- International political organizations, 192, 206
- Internet, 196, 199, 200
- Internship, 165
- Interpersonal interactions and relationships, 159-63
- Interpersonal interactions, basic, 159
- Interpersonal interactions, complex, 160
- Interpersonal interactions, General 159-61
- Interpersonal relationships, Particular, 161-3
- Intervention matching, ICF use, 251
- Intestinal obstruction, 82
- Intestinal paralysis, 82
- Intimate relationships, maintaining, 163
- Intonation, 72
- Introducing oneself, 135, 160
- Introversion, 50
- Involuntary contraction of muscles, 99
- Involuntary contractions of large muscles, 100
- Involuntary contractions of muscles, 99, 101
- Involuntary movement, 100, 101
- Involuntary movement reaction, 100
- Involvement in a life situation, 10, 14, 15, 123, 213, 214, 229, 234, 237
- Iris, 109
- Iron deficiency, 86
- Ironing clothes, 156
- Irregular heartbeat, 80
- Irregular breathing, 78
- Irresponsible, 50
- Irritable, 50
- Jamais vu, 61
- Job, interview for, 165
- Job, leaving or quitting, 165
- Job, maintaining, 165
- Job placement services, 205
- Job-related tasks, performing, 165
- Job resume, preparing, 165
- Joints and bones, functions of, 94-5
- Joints of hand and fingers, 119
- Joints of head and neck region, 118
- Joint, mobility of, 94
- Joints of pelvic region, 119
- Joints, range and ease of movement of, 94
- Joints of shoulder region, 118
- Joy, 55
- Judgement, 58
- Jumping, 145
- Keloid formation, 103
- Kerb cuts, 171, 180, 232
- Kicking, 142
- Kidney, 116
- Kidneys, functions of, 89

- Kinaesthesia, 67  
Knee joint, 120  
Kneeling, 138  
Kneeling position, maintaining, 140  
Knowledge, applying, 126-8  
Labia majora, 116  
Labia minora, 116  
Labour and employment policies, 5, 206  
Labour and employment services, 205  
Labour and employment services, systems and policies, 205  
Labour and employment systems, 205  
Labour relations services, 205  
Labour standards and law, 205, 206  
Lachrymal gland, 109  
Lachrymal glands, functions of, 64  
Lactation, 92  
Land development, products and technology, 180  
Land forms, 182  
Land use policies, 180  
Language, integrated functions of, 59  
Language, mental functions of, 58  
Large intestine, 115  
Larynx, 112  
Larynx, functions of, 71  
Law reform, and ICF, 5, 6  
Laziness, 50  
Learning, basic, 125-6  
Learning and applying knowledge, 125-8  
Learning at home, 164  
Learning to calculate, 126  
Learning to read, 125  
Learning to write, 125  
Leg, structure, 120  
Legal policies, 198  
Legal services, 198  
Legal services, systems and policies, 198  
Legal standing as a citizen, enjoying, 170  
Legal status as a citizen, enjoying, 170  
Legislation and laws, 19, 195, 198, 202, 203, 204  
Legislation, regulations and standards, 193, 194, 195, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206  
Lens of eyeball, 109  
Leprosy, 19  
Life areas, 14, 123, 234, 235  
Life events, 17  
Life experiences, 214  
Life span, variations, 218  
Lifestyle, 17  
Lifting objects, 141  
Lifts or elevators, escalators, 178  
Ligaments and fasciae of ankle and foot, 120  
Ligaments and fasciae of forearm, 119  
Ligaments and fasciae of hand, 119  
Ligaments and fasciae of head and neck region, 118  
Ligaments and fasciae of lower leg, 120  
Ligaments and fasciae of pelvic region, 119  
Ligaments and fasciae of shoulder region, 118  
Ligaments and fasciae of thigh, 120  
Ligaments and fasciae of trunk, 121  
Ligaments and fasciae of upper arm, 118  
Light, 184  
Light intensity, 184  
Light quality, 184  
Light sensitivity, 63, 225  
Lighting, artificial, 184  
Limping, 102  
Lips, 111  
Listening, 125  
Lived experience of disability, 15, 123, 229  
Liver, 115  
Localisation of sound source, 65  
Locating and choosing a job, 165  
Long-term care services, 203  
Love, 55  
Low backache or pain, 69  
Lower extremity, structure, 119  
Lower leg, structure, 120  
Lumbar vertebral column, 121  
Lunar cycles, 185

- Lungs, 114
- Lying down, 138
- Lying position, maintaining, 139
- lymph nodes, functions of, 78
- Lymphatic nodes and vessels, 113
- lymphatic vessels, functions of, 78
- Major life areas, 164-7
- Making a choice among options, 128
- Making decisions, 128
- Making plans, 130
- Malabsorption in stomach, 82
- Managed health care, 6
- Managing day-to-day requirements, 130
- Managing diet and fitness, 152
- Managing one's own activity level, 131
- Manipulating objects, 142
- Manipulation of food in the mouth, 81
- Mannerisms, 101
- Marriages, funerals or initiation ceremonies, engaging in, 168
- Masticating food, 81
- Mathematical principles, applying, 127
- Mathematical signs, using, 126
- Mathematics, applying operations, 126
- Mathematics, performing, 126-7
- Mathematics, translating word problems into arithmetic procedures, 60
- Meals, having, 151
- Meals, organizing, 154
- Meals, preparing, 154
- Media policies, 200
- Media services, 199
- Media systems, 200
- Medical care, 20
- Medical rehabilitation services, 203
- Medical social workers, 188
- Medulla oblongata, 107
- Melody of speech, 72
- Memory, 53
- Memory, autobiographical, 54
- Memory, retrieval of, 54
- Memory, semantic, 54
- Memory, short-term, 54
- Memory, long-term, 54
- Menarche, 91, 227
- Mending clothes, 156
- Meninges, 108
- Menopause, 91, 92, 93, 227
- Menorrhagia, 91
- Menstrual bleeding, extent of, 91
- Menstrual care, 150
- Menstrual cycle, discomfort, 93
- Menstrual cycle, regularity, 91
- Menstrual flow, 91
- Menstruation functions, 91, 227
- Menstruation, interval between, 91
- Menstruation, retrograde, 91
- Mental (or psychological) functions, 12, 213
- Mental flexibility, 57
- Mental functions, 48-61
- Mental health, 220, 247, 250
- Mental health applications of ICF, 220
- Mental illness, 19
- Mental retardation, 49
- Metabolism and the endocrine system, functions of, 85-7
- Metabolism of carbohydrate, 85
- Methodical, 50
- Midbrain, 107
- Migration., 182
- Mimicking, 125
- Mineral balance, 86
- Miscarriage, 92
- Mixing foods, 155
- Mobility and transportation, products and technology, 174
- Mobility of bone, 95
- Mobility of carpal bones, 95
- Mobility of joint, 94
- Mobility of joint, several, 94
- Mobility of joint, single, 94
- Mobility of joints, generalized, 94
- Mobility of pelvis, 95
- Mobility of scapula, 95
- Mobility of tarsal bones, 95
- Mobility, 138-48
- Model of disability, biopsychosocial, 20
- Model of disability, ICF, 18



- Model of disability, interactive, 8,  
17, 18, 19  
Model of disability, medical, 19, 20  
Model of disability, social, 19, 20  
Modulation of pitch patterns in  
speech, 72  
Money, 154, 166, 181  
Monitoring one's own work  
performance, 165  
Monocular acuity of distant vision, 62  
Monocular acuity of near vision, 62  
Monoparesis, 96, 97, 99  
Monoplegia, 96, 97, 99  
Monotone speech, 72  
Moody, 50  
Mopping floors, 155  
Morbidity information, 4, 13  
Mortality information, 4  
Mosque, attending, 169  
Motivation, 51  
Motor perseveration, 101  
Motor reflex, 99  
Motorboat, driving, 147  
Motorcycle, driving, 147  
Motorized and non-motorized  
vehicles, 174  
Motorized transportation, using  
private, 147  
Mouth, 111  
Mouth breathing, 79  
Movement Functions, 99-102  
Movement, structures related to,  
118-21  
Moving around, 144  
Moving around outside the home  
and other buildings, 146  
Moving around using equipment,  
146  
Moving around using  
transportation, 146-8  
Moving around within buildings  
other than home, 146  
Moving around within the home,  
145  
Moving from floor to floor, 145  
Moving inside, outside and around  
buildings, 146  
Moving objects with lower  
extremities, 142  
Muscle atrophy, 19  
Muscle endurance, 98-9  
Muscle endurance, all muscles of  
the body, 99  
Muscle endurance, isolated  
muscles, 98  
Muscle endurance, muscle groups,  
99  
Muscle functions, 96-9  
Muscle paralysis, 96  
Muscle paresis, 96  
Muscle power, 96-7  
Muscle power, all muscles of the  
body, 97  
Muscle power, isolated muscles and  
muscle groups, 96  
Muscle power, muscles in lower half  
of the body, 96  
Muscle power, muscles of all limbs,  
96  
Muscle power, muscles of one limb,  
96  
Muscle power, muscles of the trunk,  
97  
Muscle power, one side of the body,  
96, 226  
Muscle spasm, 102  
Muscle spasticity, 97  
Muscle stiffness, sensations, 102  
Muscle tension, 97  
Muscle tightness, 102  
Muscle tone, 97-8  
Muscle tone, all muscles of the  
body, 98  
Muscle tone, isolated muscles and  
muscle groups, 97  
Muscle tone, muscles of all limbs,  
98  
Muscle tone, muscles of lower half  
of body, 98  
Muscle tone, muscles of one limb,  
97  
Muscle tone, muscles of one side of  
body, 97  
Muscle tone, trunk, 98  
Muscle weakness, 96  
Muscle, sensation of heaviness, 102  
Muscles of ankle and foot, 120  
Muscles of forearm, 119  
Muscles of hand, 119



- Muscles of head and neck region, 118
- Muscles of lower leg, 120
- Muscles of pelvic region, 119
- Muscles of respiration, structure, 114
- Muscles of shoulder region, 118
- Muscles of thigh, 120
- Muscles of trunk, 121
- Muscles of upper arm, 118
- Musculoskeletal structures related to movement, additional, 121
- Museum or art gallery, going to, 168
- Musical notation, 134
- Musical vocal sounds, production of, 73
- Mutual aid organizations, 198, 199
- Myasthenia gravis, 98
- Myocarditis, 74
  
- Nails, caring for, 149
- Nails, functions of, 103, 104, 122
- Nails, structure, 122
- Nannies, 188
- Narcolepsy, 52
- Nasal fossae, 111
- Nasal pharynx, 111
- Nasal septum, 111
- Natural disasters, emergency services, 196
- Natural environment and human-made changes to environment, 182-6
- Natural events, 184
- Natural products, 173
- Naturopathic medication, 173
- Nausea, 66
- Needs assessment, 5
- Negativism, psychological, 54
- Neighbours, 161, 187, 190, 224
- Neighbours, creating relationships with, 162
- Nephews, 187
- Nervous system, structure, 107-8
- Neural prostheses, 174
- Neuromusculoskeletal and movement-related functions, 94-102
- Neutral terms, in the ICF, 218
- Newspapers, 127, 199, 200
  
- Nieces, 187
- Night blindness, 62, 63, 225
- Night sweats during menopause, 92
- Non-purposive involuntary contract of muscles, 101
- Non-remunerative employment, 166
- Non-verbal messages, expressing with and producing, 134
- Normative beliefs, norms, 191
- North American Collaborating Centre for ICIDH, 247
- Nose, 111
- Notaries, 198
- Not-for-profit organizations., 199
- Numbers, manipulating, 60, 126
- Numbness, 67, 68
- Numeric coding in ICF, 220
- Nurses, 188
- Nutritious foods, consuming, 152
- Nystagmus, 64
  
- Obesity, 84
- Obsession, 57
- Occupational health and safety services, 205
- Occupational therapists, 188
- Ocular stimuli, 56
- Odours, 186
- Oesophageal swallowing, 82
- Oesophagus, 115
- Office equipment, 176
- Olfactory functions, 67
- Olfactory perception, 56
- Oligozoospermia, 92
- Oliguria, 89
- Open space planning policies, 194
- Open space planning services, 194
- Open space planning services, systems and policies, 194
- Open space planning systems, 194
- Opening bottles and cans, 151, 152
- Openness to experience, 50
- Operational definitions, in the ICF, 21, 217, 221, 251
- Opinions and beliefs, 190
- Oppositional, 50
- Optical and auditory devices, 175
- Optimism, 50
- Oral pharynx, 111

- Oral swallowing, 82  
Ordering events, 58  
Organized religion, engaging in, 169  
Organizations, financial, 200  
Organizations, international  
    political, 192, 206  
Organizations, sporting, 125, 177, 198  
Orgasm, 90, 91, 92  
Orientation functions, 48  
Orientation to person, 49  
Orientation to time, 49  
Orthotist, prosthetists, 188  
'Other specified', use in ICF, 221  
Outdoor air quality, 186  
Outplacement services, 205  
Ovaries, 116  
Overweight, 84  
Owning and running a shop or  
    other business., 166  
Ozone levels, 186
- Pain, 68-70  
Pain in back, 69  
Pain in body part, 68  
Pain in chest, 69  
Pain in head and neck, 69  
Pain in joints, 69  
Pain in lower limb, 69  
Pain in multiple body parts, 69  
Pain in stomach or abdomen, 69  
Pain in the hip, 69  
Pain in the pelvic region, 69  
Pain in the shoulder, 69  
Pain in the trunk, 69  
Pain in upper limb, 69  
Pain, generalized, 68  
Pain, radiating in a dermatome, 70  
Pain, radiating in a segment or  
    region, 70  
Painting., 134, 157  
Palate, 111  
Palpitation, 80  
Pancreas, 115  
Paraesthesia, 67, 68  
Paralysis, general, 98  
Paraparesis, 96, 98, 99  
Paraplegia, 96, 98, 99  
Paraplegic gait, 102
- Parasympathetic nervous system, 108  
Parathyroid gland, 115  
Parent, relating as, 162  
Parenting, 162  
Parents, 162, 163, 164, 187  
Paresis, 98, 99  
Parkinson's disease, 98  
Parks, conservation and wildlife  
    areas, products and technology, 181  
Participation, 3, 6, 8, 10, 11, 14, 15, 16, 18, 20, 123, 213, 229, 234, 237  
Participation restriction, 3, 7, 8, 14, 15, 19, 123, 213, 229  
Participation, standard, 213  
Partners, 187  
Part-time employment, 166  
Patellar reflex, 99  
Path routing, 179, 180  
Pathology, 12  
Pathways and signposting, 180  
Peeling foods, 155  
Peers, 187, 190  
Peers, creating relationships with, 162  
Pelvic floor, 116  
Pelvic region, structure, 119  
Pelvis, mobility of, 95  
Penile erection, 90  
Penis, 117  
Pensions, 202, 251  
People with disabilities, 5, 7  
People with disabilities and ICF, 242  
Perceptual functions, 55  
Performance, as construct, 8, 11, 14-5, 17, 19, 22, 23, 24, 123-4, 216, 229-32, 235, 237  
Performance, as qualifier, 123, 226, 229, 230, 231, 232, 235, 237  
Peristalsis, 82  
Perseveration, 57, 101  
Personal care providers and  
    personal assistants, 188  
Personal factors, 8, 10, 11, 16, 17, 19, 213-4, 216, 219, 251  
Personality, 50, 55  
Pets, 156, 157, 188  
Phantom limb, 61

- Pharyngeal swallowing, 82  
 Pharynx, 111  
 Phonation, 71  
 Phonemes, articulation of, 71  
 Photophobia, 63  
 Physical activity, getting  
     appropriate level of, 152  
 Physical contact in relationships,  
     dealing with, 159  
 Physical endurance, 80  
 Physical fitness programmes,  
     engaging in, 168  
 Physical geography, 182  
 Physiological functions, 3, 10, 12  
 Physiotherapists, 188  
 Picking up objects, 142  
 Picture distortion, 63  
 Pigmentation, 103  
 Pituitary gland, 115  
 Place to live, acquiring, 153  
 Place to live, buying, 153  
 Place to live, renting, 153  
 Plans, carrying out, 57  
 Plans, making, 130  
 Planning, 5, 57, 155, 157, 180, 194  
 Planning acts, 194  
 Planning and development of space,  
     180  
 Plants, 183  
 Plants, indoors and outdoors,  
     taking care of, 157  
 Play, recreational or leisure activity,  
     engaging in, 168  
 Play, engaging in, 169  
 Playing a musical instrument, 168-9  
 Playing chess or cards, 169  
 Police, 198  
 Political life and citizenship,  
     engaging in, 170  
 Political life of citizen, engaging in,  
     170  
 Political policy, 206  
 Political services, 206  
 Political services, systems and  
     policies, 206  
 Political systems, 206  
 Pollution, land, water or air, 184  
 Polymenorrhoea, 91  
 Polyuria, 89  
 Pons, 107, 262  
 Population, 182  
 Population density, 182  
 Population health, 4  
 Population health surveys, 6  
 Population studies and surveys, 5  
 Possession states, 48  
 Post office, 196  
 Post-secondary educational  
     institutions, 204  
 Postural hypotension, 76  
 Postural reactions, 100  
 Posturing, 54  
 Pouring liquids for drinking, 152  
 Poverty, 171, 233  
 Poverty relief programmes, 201, 202  
 Precipitation, 183  
 Pregnancy, 92, 212  
 Premature ejaculation, 90  
 Premenstrual tension, 91  
 Preschool, 164, 204  
 Press reporting services, 199, 200  
 Prevention, 6, 13  
 Priapism, 90  
 Primary care services, 203  
 Primary school, 204  
 Problem-solving, 58  
 Procreation functions, 92  
 Production and manufacturing,  
     services, systems, policies, 193  
 Production of speech sounds, 71  
 Products and technology for  
     communication, 175  
 Products and technology for  
     communication, assistive, 175  
 Products and technology for  
     communication, general, 175  
 Products and technology for  
     culture, recreation and sport,  
     177  
 Products and technology for  
     culture, recreation and sport,  
     assistive, 177  
 Products and technology for  
     culture, recreation and sport,  
     general, 177  
 Products and technology for  
     education, 176  
 Products and technology for  
     employment, 176



- Products and technology for employment, assistive, 176
- Products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation, 174
- Products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation, assistive, 175
- Products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation, general, 174
- Products and technology for personal use in daily living, 173
- Products and technology for personal use in daily living, assistive, 174
- Products and technology for personal use in daily living, general, 174
- Products and technology for the practice of religion and spirituality, 177
- Products and technology for the practice of religion or spirituality, assistive, 178
- Products and technology for the practice of religion or spirituality, general, 178
- Products and technology of land development, 180
- Products and technology of parks, conservation and wildlife areas, 181
- Products and technology of rural land development, 180
- Products and technology of suburban land development, 180
- Products and technology of urban land development, 180
- Products and technology, 173-181
- Products or substances for personal consumption, 173
- Professional association services, 205
- Professional programmes, 204
- Professional relationships, finding, 160
- Professional social organizations, engaging in, 168
- Professionals, other, 188
- Prone position, staying in, 139
- Proprioceptive function, 67
- Prosody, 72
- Prostate, 117
- Prostheses, neural, 174
- Prostheses, orthoses, repairing, 157
- Prosthetic and orthotic devices, 174
- Prostrate position, getting into, 138
- Protein metabolism, 85
- Psychic stability, 50
- Psychological assets, 17
- Psychological demands and stress, handling, 131
- Psychological functions, 10, 12
- Psychomotor control, 54
- Psychomotor excitement, 54
- Psychomotor functions, 54
- Psychomotor functions, quality of, 54
- Psychomotor retardation, 54
- Ptosis, 64
- Public assistance programmes, 201, 202
- Public transportation, using, 147
- Public, commercial services, cooperatives, 200
- Pulling objects, 143
- Pulmonary emphysema, 78
- Pupillary reflex, 64
- Purposeful sensing, 125
- Pushing objects, 143
- Pushing objects with lower extremities, 142
- Putting down objects, 141
- Quadriceps reflex, 99
- Quadriplegia, 96, 239
- Qualifier, 8, 11, 12-6, 21, 22, 24, 216, 221-2
- Qualifier, body functions and structure, 47
- Qualifier, body structure, 105, 106, 228
- Qualifier, environmental factors, 171, 233
- Qualifiers, Activities and Participation, 123



- Qualifiers, optional for activities and participation, 230
- Qualifiers, scaling, 222
- Quality assurance, 5
- Quality of life, 5, 251
- Quality of vision, 63, 220, 225
- Questionnaire application of ICF, 221
- Race, 7, 17
- Radio, 125, 199, 200
- Radius reflex, 99
- Rain, 183
- Ramps, portable or stationary, 178, 179
- Reaching for objects, 143
- Reading, 127
- Reading for enjoyment, 168, 169
- Reading lips, 136
- Reasons for contact with health services, 4
- Recalling, 53, 54
- Reception of language, 58
- Reception of language, sign, 59
- Reception of language, spoken, 59
- Reception of language, written, 59
- Recognizing characters and alphabets, 125
- Recreation and leisure organizations, 148, 168, 199
- Recreation and leisure, engaging in, 168
- Recreational and sporting equipment, 177
- Reflex, biceps, 99
- Reflex incontinence, 89
- Reflexes generated by noxious stimuli, 99
- Reflexes generated by other exteroceptive stimuli, 99
- Regional authorities, 206
- Regurgitation, 82
- Rehabilitation services, 5, 23, 203, 220, 246, 247, 250
- Rehearsing, 125
- Rehydration, 86
- Relating to employee, 161
- Relating to employer, 161
- Relating with equals, 161
- Relating with persons in authority, 161
- Relating with strangers, 161
- Relating with subordinates, 161
- Relation to self and others, knowing and ascertaining, 48
- Relationships, dealing with physical contact, 159
- Relationships, dealing with social cues, 159
- Relationships, formal, creating, 161
- Relationships, forming, 160
- Relationships, intimate, maintaining, 163
- Relationships, reacting to criticism, 159
- Relationships, showing respect and warmth, 159
- Relationships, showing appreciation, 159
- Relationships, showing tolerance, 159
- Relationships, terminating, 160
- Relationships with acquaintances, creating, 162
- Relationships with co-inhabitants, creating, 162
- Relationships with friends, creating, 162
- Relationships with neighbours, creating, 162
- Relationships with peers, creating, 162
- Relaxation, engaging in, 168
- Releasing objects, 142
- Religion and spirituality, engaging in, 169
- Religious associations, 199
- Religious beliefs, 190
- Religious ceremonies, activities and events, engaging in, 169
- Religious doctrine, 191
- Religious leaders, 187
- Remote control entry and exit, 174, 176
- Remunerative employment, 165
- Renal insufficiency, 89
- Renting a place to live, 153
- Repairing fixtures and furniture, 157

- Repetition of sounds, 72  
Repetitive speech cadence, 72  
Reproductive system, structure, 116  
Residential and non-residential care facilities, 203, 204  
Residential, commercial, industrial and public buildings, 193  
Respect and warmth in relationships, showing, 159  
Respect, ethical guideline for use of ICF, 244  
Respiration functions, 78  
Respiration rate, 78  
Respiration, depth of, 79  
Respiration, irregular, 78  
Respiration, paradoxical, 78  
Respiration, rhythm and depth, 78  
Respiration, superficial or shallow, 79  
Respiratory muscle functions, 79  
Respiratory rhythm, 78  
Respiratory system, functions of, 78-9  
Respiratory system, structure, 113  
Responsibilities, handling, 131  
Restlessness, 54  
Retina, 109  
Rickshaw, using, 147  
Riding animals for transportation, 148  
Right left coordination, 100  
Right left motor coordination, 100  
Right to self-determination or autonomy, 170  
Ringing in ears, 66  
Risk factors, 4  
Romantic relationships, creating and maintaining, 163  
Romantic relationships, maintaining, 163  
Routines, organizing, 129  
Rule, following, 126  
Rumination, 57  
Running, 145  
Running for political office, 170  
Running patterns, 102  
Rural land development, products and technology, 180  
Rural land use policies, 180  
Rural or urban setting, 171, 233  
Sacral vertebral column, 121  
Salivary glands, 115  
Salivation, 81  
Sanitation, 196  
Sanitation of terms, 243  
Saving money, 166  
Scab formation, 103  
Scanners, 174, 176  
Scapula, laterorotation of, 95  
Scapula, medial rotation of, 95  
Scarring, 103  
School education, 164  
Scientific symbols, 134  
Scooters, 174  
Scotoma, 62, 63  
Scratching, 104  
Screaming, 72  
Scrupulous, 50  
Seasonal variation, 184  
Sebaceous glands, 122  
Secondary school, 204  
Seeing and related functions, 62-4  
Seeing floaters or webbing, 63  
Seeing functions, 62, 63, 220, 225  
Seeing stars or flashes, 63  
Self-assuredness, 51  
Self-care and care of others, support service, 202  
Self-care, 149-52  
Self-effacing, 51  
Self-employment, 166  
Semantic and symbolic meaning, organizing, 59  
Sensation of distension of the stomach, 84  
Sensation of falling, 66  
Sensation of muscle spasm, 102  
Sensation of muscle stiffness, 102  
Sensation of nausea, 84  
Sensation of pain, 68  
Sensation of pins and needles, 103  
Sensation of rotating, swaying or tilting, 66  
Sensations related to the skin, 103  
Sensation, crawling, 103  
Sensations associated with hearing and vestibular function, 66  
Sensations associated with the eye and adjoining structures, 64



- Sensations of burning in the eye, 64
- Sensations of cardiovascular and respiratory functions, 80
- Sensations of digestive system, 84
- Sensations of dizziness, 66
- Sensations of genital and reproductive functions, 92
- Sensations of incomplete voiding of urine, 90
- Sensations of irritation in ear, 66
- Sensations of irritation in the ear, 66
- Sensations of missing a heart beat, 80
- Sensations of muscles and movement functions, 102
- Sensations of pressure behind the eye, 64
- Sensations of something in the eye, 64
- Sensations of tightness of chest, 80
- Sensations of tired eyes, 64
- Sensations of urinary functions, 90
- Sensing bitterness, 67
- Sensing cold and heat, 67
- Sensing noxious stimulus, 67
- Sensing odours, 67
- Sensing pressure, 67
- Sensing pressure against or on the skin, 68
- Sensing saltiness, 67
- Sensing shaking or oscillation, 68
- Sensing sourness, 67
- Sensing surfaces and their texture, 67
- Sensing sweetness, 67
- Sensing temperature, 67
- Sensing the presence of sounds, 65
- Sensing the relative position of body parts, 67
- Sensing vibration, 67
- Sensitivity to a noxious stimulus, 68
- Sensitivity to pressure, 68
- Sensitivity to temperature, 67
- Sensitivity to vibration, 68
- Sensory functions, additional 67-8
- Sensory functions and pain, 62-70
- Sensory functions related to temperature, 67
- Sentience, 48
- Sequencing complex movements, 60
- Service clubs, engaging in, 168
- Service utilization, 13
- Services, systems and policies for the production of consumer goods, 192
- Services, systems and policies, 192-207
- Serving food, 155
- Serving meals, 154
- Sewing, 156
- Sexual arousal, 90, 92
- Sexual functions, 90
- Sexual intercourse, 90, 92
- Sexual intercourse, discomfort during, 92
- Sexual interest, 90
- Sexual preparatory, 90
- Sexual relationships, maintaining, 163
- Sexually transmitted diseases, avoiding, 152
- Shaft of penis, 117
- Shaving, 150
- Shelters for homeless people, 195
- Shifting mental sets, 58
- Shifting the body's centre of gravity, 139
- Shopping, 154
- Shortness of breath, 80
- Shoulder region, structure, 118
- Shyness, 50
- Sibling relationships, maintaining, 163
- Siblings, 187
- Sightseeing, 168
- Sign language, expressing with and producing, 59, 134-55
- Signage, 179, 180, 181
- Signs and symbols, expressing with and producing, 134
- Signalling systems, 175
- Signposting and street lighting, 180
- Singing, 72, 73, 185
- Sister, relating as and to, 163
- Sitting, 139
- Sitting position, maintaining, 140
- Skating, 146
- Sketching, 134

- Skiing, 146
- Skills, acquiring, 126
- Skills, acquiring basic, 126
- Skills, acquiring complex, 126
- Skin, 70, 103, 122
- Skin and related structures,
  - functions of, 103-4
- Skin glands, structure, 122
- Skin of head and neck region, 122
- Skin of lower extremity, 122
- Skin of pelvic region, 122
- Skin of the shoulder region, 122
- Skin of trunk and back, 122
- Skin of upper extremity, 122
- skin, caring for, 149
- Skin, glandular functions of, 103
- Skin, hardening, 103
- Skin, insulating function of, 103
- Skin, photosensitivity, 103
- Skin, protective functions of, 103
- Skin, quality of, 103
- Skin, repair functions of, 103
- Sleep, 52
- Sleep cycle, 52
- Sleep, amount of, 52
- Sleep, maintenance of, 52
- Sleep, onset of, 52
- Sleep, quality of, 52
- Sleep, REM, 52
- Sleep-related movement disorders,
  - 101
- Slicing foods, 155
- Small intestine, 115
- Smell function, 67
- Smelling, 125
- Smells, 56, 67
- Smiling, 134
- Smoke, 186
- Sneezing, 79
- Snow, 183
- Sciableness, 50
- Social action, 5
- Social assistance programmes, 201-2
- Social background, 17
- Social benefit programmes, 251
- Social capital, 171, 233
- Social ceremonies or non-religious
  - rites, engaging in, 168
- Social change, 20
- Social conventions governing one's
  - role, complying with, 160
- Social cues in relationships, reacting
  - to, 159
- Social environment, 10
- Social insurance programmes, 201
- Social life of citizen, engaging in,
  - 170
- Social norms, practices and
  - ideologies, 191
- Social policy, 5
- Social relationships, informal,
  - creating, 161
- Social rules, interacting according
  - to, 160
- Social or legal status, 160, 170, 214
- Social security, 5, 6, 201, 202
- Social security services, 201
- Social security services, systems and
  - policies, 201
- Social security systems, 202
- Social space, maintaining, 160
- Social status, 214
- Social support programmes, 202
- Social support policies, 203
- Social support services, 202
- Social support services, systems and
  - policies, 202
- Social support systems, 202
- Social use of ICF information,
  - ethical guidelines, 245
- Social workers, 188
- Socializing, 169
- Societal perspective on disability, 6,
  - 7, 15, 16, 27, 213
- Socioeconomic characteristics, 7
- Soft palate, 111
- Solutions to questions or situations,
  - finding, 127
- Solving complex problems, 127
- Solving problems, 127
- Solving simple problems, 127
- Somatization, 57
- Sorrow, feeling of, 55
- Sound, 185
- Sound detection, 65
- Sound discrimination, 65
- Sound distractions, 185
- Sound intensity, 185
- Sound, lateralization of, 65



- Sound quality, 185
- Sound separation and blending, 65
- Sound transmission systems, 175
- Sounding out words, 125
- Sounds, making a range of, 73
- Spastic dysarthria, 71
- Spastic gait, 102
- Speaking, 59, 134
- Speech articulation, 71
- Speech discrimination, 65
- Speech, modulation of pitch
  - patterns, 72
- Speech, monotone, 72
- Speech therapists, 188
- Speech, fluency and rhythm of, 72
- Speech, speed of, 72
- Speech, uninterrupted flow of, 72
- Spelling, 125
- Spinal cord, 107
- Spinal cord, cauda equina, 108
- Spinal cord, cervical, 107
- Spinal cord, lumbosacral, 108
- Spinal cord, thoracic, 107
- Spinal nerves, 108
- Spiritual contemplation, engaging
  - in, 169
- Spirituality, engaging in, 170
- Spleen, 113
- Spontaneous abortions, 92
- Sporting organizations, 125, 177, 199
- Sports, engaging in, 169
- Spousal relationships, creating and
  - maintaining, 163
- Spouses, 187
- Squatting, 138
- Squatting position, maintaining, 139
- Stability of joint, 94
- Stability of joint, single, 95
- Stability of joints, generalized, 95
- Stability of joints, several, 95
- Stamina, 51, 80
- Stammering, 72
- Standard Rules for the Equalization
  - of Opportunities for Persons
  - with Disabilities (1993), 6, 170
- Standing, 139
- Standing position, maintaining, 140
- Statesthesia, 67
- Statistical norms, 213
- Stereotypic speech cadence, 72
- Stereotypies, 101
- Sterility, 92
- Stigma, 16, 19, 239
- Stomach, 115
- Stomach gas, 84
- Stomach spasm, 84
- Storage of nutrients in the body, 83
- Storing daily necessities, 156
- Storing food, drinks, 156
- Strangers, 188
- Street lighting., 180
- Stress, 212
- Stress, handling, 129, 131
- Stress incontinence, 89
- Stretch motor reflex, 99
- Students, 161, 188
- Stupor, 48
- Stuttering, 72, 240
- Subfertility, 92
- Subjective well-being and ICF, 251
- Subordinate, people positions of, 188
- Substance abuse, 51
- Substitute decision-makers, 187
- Suburban land development,
  - products and technology, 180
- Subway, using, 147
- Sucking, 81
- Summary measures of population
  - health, 4
- Sunlight, 184
- Supervisors, 187
- Supine position, staying in, 139
- Support and relationships, 187-9
- Supporting reactions, 100
- Supportive functions of arm or leg, 100
- Surface and air mail, 196
- Survey, application of ICF, 221
- Swallowing, 82
- Sweat glands, 122
- Sweating, 103
- Sweeping, 155
- Swimming, 145
- Symbolic notation systems, 134
- Sympathetic nervous system, 108
- Symptoms and signs, 13
- Synagogue, attending, 169

- Systematizing, 57  
Systems, 192
- Tables, adjustable, 176  
Tachycardia, 74  
Tachylalia, 72  
Tachypnoea, 78  
Tactile perception, 56  
Tangentiality, 56, 57  
Tarsal bones, mobility of, 95  
Task, 7, 10, 11, 14, 15, 123, 216, 229, 243, 239  
Task, undertaking complex, 129  
Task, undertaking simple, 129  
Task, undertaking single task in a group, 129  
Task, undertaking single task independently, 129  
Tasks, carrying out multiple, 130  
Tasks, completing multiple, 130  
Tasks, undertaking multiple, 130  
Tasks, undertaking multiple tasks in a group, 130  
Tasks, undertaking multiple tasks independently, 130  
Tasks and demands, general, 129-132  
Taste function, 67  
Tastes, 56  
Tasting, 67, 125  
Taxi, using, 147  
Taxonomic and terminological issues, 211-18  
Taxonomic principles, 211  
Teachers, 164, 187, 188  
Tear ducts and glands, functions of, 64  
Teeth, 111  
Teeth, caring for, 149  
Telecommunication devices, using, 136  
Telecommunication regulation authorities, 196  
Telephone, 175, 196  
Telephone relay, 196  
Telephones, using, 136  
Teletext, 196, 200  
Teletype, 196  
Television, 175, 199, 200  
Television and video equipment, 175  
Temperament, 50  
Temperature, 183  
Temple, attending, 169  
Tension, 54, 55  
Terms, in the ICF, 3, 6, 7, 10, 13, 21, 49, 171, 211, 216, 217, 235  
Testes, 117  
Tetraparesis, 96, 98, 99  
Tetraplegia, 96, 98, 99  
Textiles, 174  
Theatre, going to, 169  
Thermoregulatory functions, 87  
Thigh, 119  
Thinking, 126  
Thinking process., 56  
Thinning of skin, 103  
Thoracic cage, 114  
Thoracic respiratory muscles, functions of, 79  
Thoracic vertebral column, 120  
Thought, 56  
Thought broadcast, 57  
Thought insertion, 57  
Thought, content of, 57  
Thought, control of, 57  
Thought, forms of, 57  
Thought, pace of, 56  
Thromboembolism, 75  
Throwing objects, 143  
Thymus, 113  
Thyroid gland, 115  
Tics, 101  
Time, allocating amounts of time to events, 58  
Time, budgeting, 130  
Time, experience of, 61  
Time management, 58  
Timer switches, 174, 176  
Time-related changes, 185  
Timid, 51  
Tingling, 67, 68, 103  
Tinnitus, 66  
Toe nails, 122  
Toileting, 150  
Tolerance in relationships, showing, 159  
Tolerance to cold, 87  
Tolerance to food, 83

- Tolerance to heat, 87
- Tongue, 111
- Tools, 126, 143, 153, 157, 174, 176
- Tools, maintaining and repairing tools, 157
- Tornadoes, 184
- Torticollis, 97
- Touch, 56, 67, 68
- Touch function, 67
- Touching, 67, 125
- Tourism and travelling for pleasure, engaging in, 168
- Trachea, 113
- Tracking movements of the eye, 64
- Trade unions, 205, 206
- Trading in commodities, 167
- Traditional leaders, 206
- Train, using, 147
- Training and skills programmes, 204
- Training services, 204
- Trance, 48
- Transfer devices, 174
- Transferring oneself, 140
- Transferring oneself while lying, 140
- Transferring oneself while sitting, 140
- Transport assistants, 188
- Transport of food through stomach and intestines, 83
- Transportation planning, 197
- Transportation policies, 197
- Transportation routes, 194
- Transportation services, 197
- Transportation services, systems and policies, 196
- Transportation systems, 197
- Transportation, public, 197
- Transportation, support service, 202
- Transporting objects, 141
- Trauma, 8, 212
- Tremor, 101
- Trunk, structure, 120
- Trustees, 187
- Trustworthiness, 51
- Tunnel vision, 62, 63
- Turning or twisting the hands or arms, 143
- Typewriters, using, 136
- Ulcers, 103
- Uncles, 163, 187
- Understanding oneself, 58
- Understanding words, 125
- Underweight, 84
- Unemployment insurance, 201, 202, 203
- UNESCO's International Standard Classification of Education, 204
- Uniform environment, 3, 11, 15, 47, 105, 123, 124, 172, 214, 229, 230, 232, 252
- Unintentional muscle contractions, 101
- United Nations, 5, 6, 170, 206
- United Nations Universal Declaration of Human Rights (1948), 170
- Universalism and the ICF, 7, 22, 248
- Unreliable, being, 50
- 'Unspecified', use in ICF, 221
- Upbringing, 17
- Upper arm, 118
- Upper extremity, structure, 118
- Upper lip, 111
- Urban land development, products and technology, 180
- Urban land use policies, 180
- Ureteric obstruction, 89
- Ureters, 116
- Ureters, functions of, 89
- Urethra, 116
- Urge incontinence, 89
- Urine, collection of, 89
- Urinary bladder, 116
- Urinary continence, 90
- Urinary filtration, 89
- Urinary functions, 89-90
- Urinary retention, 89
- Urinary system, structure, 116
- Urinary urgency, 89
- Urination functions, 89
- Urination, frequency, 89
- Urination, regulating, 150
- Urine retention, 89
- Uterus, 116
- Utilities, 195
- Utilities policies, 196



- Utilities services, 195
- Utilities services, systems and policies, 195
- Utilities systems, 195
- Vacuum cleaners, using, 156
- Vagina, 116
- Vaginal canal, 116
- Vaginal lubrication, 90
- Vaginismus, 90
- Values, 190, 214, 237
- Varicose veins, 75
- Vasomotor function, 75
- Vegetative states, 48
- Vehicle adaptations, 174
- Vehicles, human-powered, using, 147
- Vehicles, maintaining, 157
- Veins, 113
- Veins, functions of, 75
- Venous, 75
- Venous constriction, 75
- Ventricular muscles, contraction force, 74
- Vertebral column, 120
- Vertigo, 66
- Vestibular function of balance, and movement and position determination, 66
- Vestibular functions, 65
- Vibration, 186
- Vigour, 51
- Village authorities, 206
- Visiting friends or relatives, 169
- Visual acuity, 62
- Visual contrast sensitivity, 63, 220
- Visual distractions, 184
- Visual field functions, 63
- Visual perception, 56
- Visual picture quality, 63
- Visuospatial perception, 56
- Vitamin and other supplements, 173
- Vitiligo, 238
- Vocal folds, 112
- Vocal tics, 101
- Vocalization, alternative, 72
- Vocational assessment, 5
- Vocational follow-up services, 205
- Vocational training, 164
- Vocational training for trade, 164
- Voice and speech functions, 71-3
- Voice and speech, related structure, 111-2
- Voice functions, 71
- Voice prostheses, 175
- Voice, production of, 71
- Voice, quality of, 71
- Voice-controlled systems, 174, 176
- Voiding the urinary bladder, 89
- Volitional control, 57
- Voluntary movement, control of, 100
- Voluntary movements, coordination of, 100
- Vomiting, 81, 82
- Voting, 170, 206
- Wakeful state, wakefulness, 48, 52
- Walker, moving around with, 146
- Walking, 144
- Walking aboard a ship, train or other vehicle, 144
- Walking and moving, 144-6
- Walking around obstacles, 144
- Walking around one's home, 145
- Walking devices, 174
- Walking down streets in the neighbourhood, town, 146
- Walking long distances, 144
- Walking on different surfaces, 144
- Walking on ice and snow, 144
- Walking on moving surfaces, 144
- Walking on sloping surfaces, 144
- Walking patterns, 102
- Walking short distances, 144
- Wars, 184
- Washing and drying clothes, 155
- Washing body parts, 149
- Washing dishes, pans, pots and cooking utensils, 155
- Washing machines, using, 156
- Washing oneself, 149
- Washing whole body, 149
- Wasting, 84
- Watching, 125
- Water and fuel, provision, 196
- Water balance, maintenance, 86
- Water retention, 86
- Water, bodies of, 182



- Water, getting, 154  
Watery stool, 83  
Wayfinding, building design,  
    products and technology, public,  
    179  
Weight maintenance, 84  
Welfare, 201, 202  
Well-being, 211-2  
Wernicke's aphasia, 58  
Wheelchair, 174-5, 239  
Wheelchair, moving around with,  
    146  
Wheelchairs and scooters,  
    maintaining, 157  
Wheezing, 80  
Whistling, 79, 185  
WHO family of classifications., 247  
Wife, relating as, 163  
Wildlife trails, 181  
Wincing, 134  
Wind, 184  
Withdrawal reflex, 99  
Work and employment, 165-6  
Work environment services, 205  
Work, volunteer, 166  
Working as a free-lance writer or  
    consultant, 166  
Working as an artist or crafts  
    person, 166  
World Health Assembly, 3, 25, 246,  
    249  
Wrist joint, 119  
Writing, 59, 127  
Writing devices, specialized, 175  
Writing machines, using, 136  
Writing messages, 135  
Written language, comprehending,  
    127  
Written record, producing, 127  
Xerophthalmia, 64  
Yawning, 79











Price: Sw.fr. 50.—

Price in developing countries: Sw.fr.35.—

ISBN 92 4 154542 9